




Mac OS X Server

Open Directory Administration
For Version 10.5 Leopard

 Apple Inc.

© 2007 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

The owner or authorized user of a valid copy of Mac OS X Server software may reproduce this publication for the purpose of learning to use such software. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted for commercial purposes, such as selling copies of this publication or for providing paid-for support services.

Every effort has been made to make sure that the information in this manual is correct. Apple Inc., is not responsible for printing or clerical errors.

Apple

1 Infinite Loop

Cupertino CA 95014-2084

www.apple.com

The Apple logo is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. Use of the “keyboard” Apple logo (Option-Shift-K) for commercial purposes without the prior written consent of Apple may constitute trademark infringement and unfair competition in violation of federal and state laws.

Apple, the Apple logo, Mac, Macintosh, Xgrid, and Xserve are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. Finder is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Adobe and PostScript are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

Other company and product names mentioned herein are trademarks of their respective companies. Mention of third-party products is for informational purposes only and constitutes neither an endorsement nor a recommendation. Apple assumes no responsibility with regard to the performance or use of these products.

019-0935/2007-09-01

Contents

Preface	11 About This Guide
	12 What's New in Version 10.5
	12 What's in This Guide
	14 Using This Guide
	14 Using Onscreen Help
	15 Mac OS X Server Administration Guides
	16 Viewing PDF Guides on Screen
	16 Printing PDF Guides
	17 Getting Documentation Updates
	17 Getting Additional Information
Chapter 1	19 Directory Services with Open Directory
	19 Benefits of Using Directory Services
	20 Directory Services and Directory Domains
	21 A Historical Perspective
	21 Data Consolidation
	23 Data Distribution
	24 Uses of Directory Data
	25 Access to Directory Services
	25 Inside a Directory Domain
	27 Structure of LDAP Directory Information
	28 Local and Shared Directory Domains
	28 About the Local Directory Domain
	29 About Shared Directory Domains
	30 Shared Data in Existing Directory Domains
	30 SMB Services and Open Directory
	31 Open Directory as a Primary Domain Controller
	32 Open Directory as a BDC
Chapter 2	33 Open Directory Search Policies
	33 Search Policy Levels
	33 Local Directory Domain Search Policy
	34 Two-Level Search Policies

- 35 Multilevel Search Policies
- 36 Automatic Search Policies
- 38 Custom Search Policies
- 38 Search Policies for Authentication and Contacts

Chapter 3

- 39 **Open Directory Authentication**
- 40 Password Types
- 40 Authentication and Authorization
- 41 Open Directory Passwords
- 41 Shadow Passwords
- 42 Crypt Passwords
- 42 Providing Secure Authentication for Windows Users
- 43 Offline Attacks on Passwords
- 44 Determining Which Authentication Option to Use
- 45 Password Policies
- 46 Single Sign-On Authentication
- 46 Kerberos Authentication
- 47 Breaking the Barriers to Kerberos Deployment
- 48 Single Sign-On Experience
- 48 Secure Authentication
- 49 Ready to Move Beyond Passwords
- 49 Multiplatform Authentication
- 49 Centralized Authentication
- 50 Kerberized Services
- 50 Configuring Services for Kerberos After Upgrading
- 51 Kerberos Principals and Realms
- 51 Kerberos Authentication Process
- 52 Open Directory Password Server and Shadow Password Authentication Methods
- 54 Disabling Open Directory Authentication Methods
- 55 Disabling Shadow Password Authentication Methods
- 56 Contents of the Open Directory Password Server Database
- 56 LDAP Bind Authentication

Chapter 4

- 57 **Open Directory Planning and Management Tools**
- 58 General Planning Guidelines
- 61 Estimating Directory and Authentication Requirements
- 62 Identifying Servers for Hosting Shared Domains
- 62 Replicating Open Directory Services
- 63 Replica Sets
- 64 Cascading Replication
- 65 Planning the Upgrade of Multiple Open Directory Replicas
- 65 Load Balancing in Small, Medium, and Large Environments
- 66 Replication in a Multibuilding Campus

66	Using an Open Directory Master, Replica, or Relay with NAT
67	Open Directory Master and Replica Compatibility
67	Mixing Active Directory and Open Directory Master and Replica Services
69	Integrating with Existing Directory Domains
70	Integrating Without Schema Changes
70	Integrating with Schema Changes
70	Avoiding Kerberos Conflicts with Multiple Directories
72	Improving Performance and Redundancy
73	Open Directory Security
74	Service Access Control Lists (SACLs)
75	Tiered Administration
75	Tools for Managing Open Directory Services
76	Server Admin
77	Directory Utility
77	Workgroup Manager
78	Command-Line Tools

Chapter 5

79	Setting Up Open Directory Services
79	Setup Overview
80	Before You Begin
81	Managing Open Directory on a Remote Server
81	Turning Open Directory On
81	Setting Up a Standalone Directory Service
83	Setting Up an Open Directory Master
85	Instructing Users How to Log In
85	Setting Up a Primary Domain Controller
86	Setting Up Windows Vista for Domain Login
87	Setting Up Windows XP for Domain Login
87	Setting Up Windows 2000 for Domain Login
88	Setting Up an Open Directory Replica
90	Creating Multiple Replicas of an Open Directory Master
91	Setting Up Open Directory Relays for Cascading Replication
91	Setting Up a Server as a BDC
92	Setting Up Open Directory Failover
93	Setting Up a Connection to a Directory Server
94	Setting Up a Server as a Mac OS X Server PDC Domain Member
95	Setting Up a Server as an Active Directory Domain Member
97	Setting Up Single Sign-On Kerberos Authentication
98	Setting Up an Open Directory Kerberos Realm
99	Starting Kerberos After Setting Up an Open Directory Master
100	Delegating Authority to Join an Open Directory Kerberos Realm
102	Joining a Server to a Kerberos Realm

Chapter 6

- 105 Managing User Authentication**
- 106 Composing a Password
- 106 Changing a User's Password
- 107 Resetting the Passwords of Multiple Users
- 108 Changing a User's Password Type
 - 108 Changing the Password Type to Open Directory
 - 110 Changing the Password Type to Crypt Password
 - 110 Changing the Password Type to Shadow Password
- 111 Enabling Single Sign-On Kerberos Authentication for a User
- 111 Changing the Global Password Policy
- 112 Setting Password Policies for Individual Users
- 113 Selecting Authentication Methods for Shadow Password Users
- 114 Selecting Authentication Methods for Open Directory Passwords
- 115 Assigning Administrator Rights for Open Directory Authentication
- 116 Keeping the Primary Administrator's Passwords in Sync
- 116 Enabling LDAP Bind Authentication for a User
- 117 Setting Passwords of Exported or Imported Users
- 117 Migrating Passwords From Mac OS X Server v10.1 or Earlier

Chapter 7

- 119 Managing Directory Clients**
- 119 Connecting Clients to Directory Servers
 - 119 About Directory Server Connections
 - 120 Automated Client Configuration
 - 121 Adding an Active Directory Server Connection
 - 121 Adding an Open Directory Server Connection
 - 122 Removing a Directory Server Connection
 - 122 Editing a Directory Server Connection
 - 123 Monitoring Directory Server Connections
- 123 Managing the Root User Account
 - 123 Enabling the Root User Account
 - 124 Changing the Root User Account Password

Chapter 8

- 125 Advanced Directory Client Settings**
- 125 About Advanced Directory Services Settings
- 126 Setting Up Directory Utility on a Remote Server
- 126 Configuring Mount Records for a Computer's Local Directory Domain
 - 126 Adding a Mount Record to the Local Directory Domain
 - 127 Removing a Mount Record from the Local Directory Domain
 - 128 Editing a Mount Record in the Local Directory Domain
- 128 Using Advanced Search Policy Settings
 - 129 Defining Automatic Search Policies
 - 130 Defining Custom Search Policies
 - 131 Defining Local Directory Search Policies

131	Waiting for a Search Policy Change to Take Effect
131	Protecting Computers from a Malicious DHCP Server
132	Using Advanced Directory Services Settings
132	Enabling or Disabling Active Directory Service
133	Enabling or Disabling LDAP Directory Services
133	Using Advanced LDAP Service Settings
134	Accessing LDAP Directories in Mail and Address Book
134	Enabling or Disabling Use of a DHCP-Supplied LDAP Directory
135	Showing or Hiding Configurations for LDAP Servers
136	Configuring Access to an LDAP Directory
138	Configuring Access to an LDAP Directory Manually
140	Changing a Configuration for Accessing an LDAP Directory
141	Duplicating a Configuration for Accessing an LDAP Directory
143	Deleting a Configuration for Accessing an LDAP Directory
144	Changing the Connection Settings for an LDAP Directory
145	Changing the Security Policy for an LDAP Connection
146	Configuring LDAP Searches and Mappings
149	Setting Up Trusted Binding for an LDAP Directory
150	Stopping Trusted Binding with an LDAP Directory
150	Changing the Open/Close Timeout for an LDAP Connection
151	Changing the Query Timeout for an LDAP Connection
151	Changing the Rebind-Try Delay Time for an LDAP Connection
152	Changing the Idle Timeout for an LDAP Connection
152	Forcing Read-Only LDAPv2 Access
152	Ignoring LDAP Server Referrals
153	Authenticating an LDAP Connection
153	Changing the Password Used for Authenticating an LDAP Connection
154	Mapping Config Record Attributes for LDAP Directories
154	Editing RFC 2307 Mapping to Enable Creating Users
155	Preparing a Read-Only LDAP Directory for Mac OS X
155	Populating LDAP Directories with Data for Mac OS X
156	Using Advanced Active Directory Service Settings
157	About Active Directory Access
159	Configuring Access to an Active Directory Domain
161	Setting Up Mobile User Accounts in Active Directory
162	Setting Up Home Folders for Active Directory User Accounts
163	Setting a UNIX Shell for Active Directory User Accounts
163	Mapping the UID to an Active Directory Attribute
164	Mapping the Primary Group ID to an Active Directory Attribute
165	Mapping the Group ID in Group Accounts to an Active Directory Attribute
166	Specifying a Preferred Active Directory Server
166	Changing the Active Directory Groups That Can Administer the Computer
167	Controlling Authentication from All Domains in the Active Directory Forest

168	Unbinding from the Active Directory Server
168	Editing User Accounts and Other Records in Active Directory
169	Setting Up LDAP Access to Active Directory Domains
170	Specifying NIS Settings
171	Specifying BSD Configuration File Settings
171	Setting Up Data in BSD Configuration Files

Chapter 9

173	Maintaining Open Directory Services
173	Controlling Access to Open Directory Servers and Services
174	Controlling Access to a Server's Login Window
174	Controlling Access to SSH Service
175	Configuring Service Access Control
176	Configuring Record Privileges
177	Monitoring Open Directory
177	Checking the Status of an Open Directory Server
177	Monitoring Replicas and Replays of an Open Directory Master
178	Viewing Open Directory Status and Logs
178	Monitoring Open Directory Authentication
179	Viewing and Editing Directory Data
179	Showing the Directory Inspector
180	Hiding the Directory Inspector
180	Setting Directory Access Controls (DACs)
180	Deleting Records
181	Deleting Users or Computers Using Inspector or the Command Line
182	Changing a User's Short Name
183	Importing Records of Any Type
183	Setting Options for an Open Directory Server
184	Setting a Binding Policy for an Open Directory Server
184	Setting a Security Policy for an Open Directory Server
186	Changing the Location of an LDAP Database
186	Limiting Search Results for LDAP Service
187	Setting the Search Timeout Interval for LDAP Service
187	Setting up SSL for LDAP Service
188	Creating a Custom SSL Configuration for LDAP
189	Managing Open Directory Replication
189	Scheduling Replication of an Open Directory Master or Primary Domain Controller (PDC)
190	Synchronizing an Open Directory Replica or BDC on Demand
190	Making an Open Directory Replica into a Relay
190	Promoting an Open Directory Replica
193	Decommissioning an Open Directory Replica
194	Archiving an Open Directory Master
195	Restoring an Open Directory Master

Chapter 10

199	Solving Open Directory Problems
199	Solving Open Directory Master and Replica Problems
199	If Kerberos Is Stopped on an Open Directory Master or Replica
200	If You Can't Create an Open Directory Replica
200	If You Can't Create an Open Directory Master or Replica from a Configuration File
200	If You Can't Connect a Replica to Your Relay
200	If You Can't Join an Open Directory Replica to an Open Directory that is a Subordinate of an Active Directory Server
201	Solving Directory Connection Problems
201	If a Delay Occurs During Startup
201	Solving Authentication Problems
201	If You Can't Change a User's Open Directory Password
201	If a User Can't Access Some Services
202	If a User Can't Authenticate for VPN Service
202	If You Can't Change a User's Password Type to Open Directory
202	If Users Relying on a Password Server Can't Log In
202	If Users Can't Log In with Accounts in a Shared Directory Domain
203	If You Can't Log In as an Active Directory User
203	If Users Can't Authenticate Using Single Sign-On Kerberos
205	If Users Can't Change Their Passwords
205	If You Can't Join a Server to an Open Directory Kerberos Realm
206	If You Must Reset an Administrator Password

Appendix

207	Mac OS X Directory Data
208	Open Directory Extensions to LDAP Schema
209	Object Classes in Open Directory LDAP Schema
217	Attributes in Open Directory LDAP Schema
237	Mapping Standard Record Types and Attributes to LDAP and Active Directory
238	Mappings for Users
241	Mappings for Groups
242	Mappings for Mounts
243	Mappings for Computers
244	Mappings for ComputerLists
245	Mappings for Config
246	Mappings for People
248	Mappings for PresetComputerLists
248	Mappings for PresetGroups
249	Mappings for PresetUsers
251	Mappings for Printers
252	Mappings for AutoServerSetup
253	Mappings for Locations
253	Standard Open Directory Record Types and Attributes
253	Standard Attributes in User Records

	258	Standard Attributes in Group Records
	259	Standard Attributes in Computer Records
	260	Standard Attributes in Computer Group Records
	261	Standard Attributes in Mount Records
	262	Standard Attributes in Config Records
Glossary	263	
Index	271	

About This Guide

This guide describes the directory and authentication services you can set up using Mac OS X Server. It also explains how to configure Mac OS X Server and Mac OS X client computers for directory services.

Mac OS X Server's Open Directory provides directory and authentication services for mixed networks of Mac OS X, Windows, and UNIX computers.

Open Directory uses OpenLDAP, the open source implementation of Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP), to provide directory services. It's compatible with other standards-based LDAP servers, and can be integrated with proprietary services such as Microsoft's Active Directory and Novell's eDirectory.

For the LDAP database backend, Open Directory uses the open source Berkeley Database. It's a highly scalable database for high-performance indexing of hundreds of thousands of user accounts and other records.

Open Directory plug-ins enable a Mac OS X client or Mac OS X Server computer to read and write authoritative information about users and network resources from any LDAP server—even Microsoft's proprietary Active Directory. The server can also access records in legacy directories such as NIS and local BSD configuration files (/etc).

Open Directory also provides authentication service. It can securely store and validate the passwords of users who want to log in to client computers on your network or to use other network resources that require authentication. Open Directory can enforce such policies as password expiration and minimum length. Open Directory can also authenticate Windows computer users for domain log in, file service, and other Windows services (SMB services) provided by Mac OS X Server.

An MIT Kerberos Key Distribution Center (KDC) is fully integrated with Open Directory and provides strong authentication with support for secure single sign-on. This means users can authenticate only once, with a single user name and password pair, for access to the range of Kerberos-enabled network services.

For services that don't accept Kerberos authentication, the integrated Secure Authentication and Service Layer (SASL) service negotiates the strongest possible authentication mechanism.

In addition, directory and authentication replication maximizes availability and scalability. By creating replicas of Open Directory servers, you can easily maintain failover servers and remote servers for fast client interaction on distributed networks.

What's New in Version 10.5

Mac OS X Server version 10.5 offers the following major enhancements in Open Directory:

- **Simplified configuration of LDAPv3 access:** Directory Utility assists you in setting up a connection to an LDAP directory.
- **Improved Server Admin Interface:** Server Admin has an easier-to-use interface.
- **Improved Authorization:** You can have a Mac OS X Open Directory server join an Active Directory server and use cross-domain authorization.
- **Improved LDAP server:** Mac OS X Server v10.5 uses OpenLDAP version 2.3.x and Berkeley DB version 4.2.52.
- **Improved local domain:** Mac OS X uses a local directory domain for local computer authentication.
- **Improved replication:** You can have a two-tier replication of a single master (also referred to as cascading replication). This gives you up to 1056 replicas of a single Open Directory master and more efficient replica sets or replica picking for password server, LDAP, and Kerberos.
- **Improved Administration:** You can have more scalability of directory domain administration by using tiered administration.
- **Improved Application support:** You can use Open Directory with applications such as Apple Wiki.

What's in This Guide

This guide includes the following chapters:

- Chapter 1, "Directory Services with Open Directory," explains what directory domains are, how they are used, and how they are organized.
- Chapter 2, "Open Directory Search Policies," describes search policies with one or more directory domains, and describes automatic, custom, and local-only search policies.
- Chapter 3, "Open Directory Authentication," describes Open Directory authentication, shadow and crypt passwords, Kerberos, LDAP bind, and single sign-on.

- Chapter 4, “Open Directory Planning and Management Tools,” helps you assess your directory domain needs, estimate directory and authentication requirements, identify servers for hosting shared domains, improve performance and redundancy, deal with replication in a multibuilding campus, and make your Open Directory services secure. This chapter also introduces the tools you use to manage Open Directory services.
- Chapter 5, “Setting Up Open Directory Services,” tells you how to set up an Open Directory server and explains the configurations and roles you can configure. This chapter also tells you how to set options of the LDAP service of an Open Directory master or replica and explains how to set up single sign-on Kerberos authentication on an Open Directory master.
- Chapter 6, “Managing User Authentication,” describes how to set password policies, change a user’s password type, assign administrator rights for Open Directory authentication, reset passwords of imported user accounts, and migrate passwords to Open Directory authentication.
- Chapter 7, “Managing Directory Clients,” explains how to use Directory Utility to configure and manage how Mac OS X computers access directory services.
- Chapter 8, “Advanced Directory Client Settings,” explains how to use the Directory Utility application to enable, disable, and configure service discovery protocols. It also explains how to configure authentication and contacts search policies and explains how to configure access to directory domains, including LDAP, Active Directory, NIS, and BSD configuration files.
- Chapter 9, “Maintaining Open Directory Services,” tells you how to monitor Open Directory services, view and edit directory data with the Inspector, archive an Open Directory master, and perform other directory maintenance.
- Chapter 10, “Solving Open Directory Problems,” describes common problems and provides information on what to do if you encounter problems while working with Open Directory.

In addition, the Appendix, “Mac OS X Directory Data,” lists the Open Directory extensions to the LDAP schema and specifies the standard record types and attributes of Mac OS X. Finally, the Glossary defines terms you’ll encounter as you read this guide.

Note: Because Apple periodically releases new versions and updates to its software, images shown in this book may be different from what you see on your screen.

Using This Guide

The chapters in this guide are arranged in the order that you're likely to need them when setting up and managing Open Directory on your server:

- Read Chapter 1 through Chapter 3 to acquaint yourself with Open Directory concepts: directory services, search policies, and authentication.
- Read Chapter 4 when you're ready to plan directory services and password authentication for your network.
- After you finish planning, use the instructions in Chapter 5 to set up Open Directory services.
- When you must set password policies or change password settings for a user account, look for instructions in Chapter 6.
- To set up or change how a Mac OS X or Mac OS X Server computer accesses directory domains, follow the instructions in Chapter 7.
- To configure advanced settings for users using Directory Utility, use Chapter 8.
- For ongoing maintenance of directory and authentication services, use Chapter 9.
- If you have problems with Open Directory, use Chapter 10 to investigate possible solutions.

Using Onscreen Help

You can get task instructions on screen in Help Viewer while you're managing Leopard Server. You can view help on a server or an administrator computer. (An administrator computer is a Mac OS X computer with Leopard Server administration software installed on it.)

To get help for an advanced configuration of Leopard Server:

- Open Server Admin or Workgroup Manager and then:
 - Use the Help menu to search for a task you want to perform.
 - Choose Help > Server Admin Help or Help > Workgroup Manager Help to browse and search the help topics.

The onscreen help contains instructions taken from *Server Administration* and other advanced administration guides described in "Mac OS X Server Administration Guides" on page 15.

To see the most recent server help topics:

- Make sure the server or administrator computer is connected to the Internet while you're getting help.

Help Viewer automatically retrieves and caches the most recent server help topics from the Internet. When not connected to the Internet, Help Viewer displays cached help topics.

Mac OS X Server Administration Guides

Getting Started covers installation and setup for standard and workgroup configurations of Mac OS X Server. For advanced configurations, *Server Administration* covers planning, installation, setup, and general server administration. A suite of additional guides, listed below, covers advanced planning, setup, and management of individual services. You can get these guides in PDF format from the Mac OS X Server documentation website:

www.apple.com/server/documentation

This guide...	tells you how to:
<i>Getting Started and Installation & Setup Worksheet</i>	Install Mac OS X Server and set it up for the first time.
<i>Command-Line Administration</i>	Install, set up, and manage Mac OS X Server using UNIX command-line tools and configuration files.
<i>File Services Administration</i>	Share selected server volumes or folders among server clients using the AFP, NFS, FTP, and SMB protocols.
<i>iCal Service Administration</i>	Set up and manage iCal shared calendar service.
<i>iChat Service Administration</i>	Set up and manage iChat instant messaging service.
<i>Mac OS X Security Configuration</i>	Make Mac OS X computers (clients) more secure, as required by enterprise and government customers.
<i>Mac OS X Server Security Configuration</i>	Make Mac OS X Server and the computer it's installed on more secure, as required by enterprise and government customers.
<i>Mail Service Administration</i>	Set up and manage IMAP, POP, and SMTP mail services on the server.
<i>Network Services Administration</i>	Set up, configure, and administer DHCP, DNS, VPN, NTP, IP firewall, NAT, and RADIUS services on the server.
<i>Open Directory Administration</i>	Set up and manage directory and authentication services, and configure clients to access directory services.
<i>Podcast Producer Administration</i>	Set up and manage Podcast Producer service to record, process, and distribute podcasts.
<i>Print Service Administration</i>	Host shared printers and manage their associated queues and print jobs.
<i>QuickTime Streaming and Broadcasting Administration</i>	Capture and encode QuickTime content. Set up and manage QuickTime streaming service to deliver media streams live or on demand.
<i>Server Administration</i>	Perform advanced installation and setup of server software, and manage options that apply to multiple services or to the server as a whole.
<i>System Imaging and Software Update Administration</i>	Use NetBoot, NetInstall, and Software Update to automate the management of operating system and other software used by client computers.
<i>Upgrading and Migrating</i>	Use data and service settings from an earlier version of Mac OS X Server or Windows NT.

This guide...	tells you how to:
<i>User Management</i>	Create and manage user accounts, groups, and computers. Set up managed preferences for Mac OS X clients.
<i>Web Technologies Administration</i>	Set up and manage web technologies, including web, blog, webmail, wiki, MySQL, PHP, Ruby on Rails, and WebDAV.
<i>Xgrid Administration and High Performance Computing</i>	Set up and manage computational clusters of Xserve systems and Mac computers.
<i>Mac OS X Server Glossary</i>	Learn about terms used for server and storage products.

Viewing PDF Guides on Screen

While reading the PDF version of a guide onscreen:

- Show bookmarks to see the guide's outline, and click a bookmark to jump to the corresponding section.
- Search for a word or phrase to see a list of places where it appears in the document. Click a listed place to see the page where it occurs.
- Click a cross-reference to jump to the referenced section. Click a web link to visit the website in your browser.

Printing PDF Guides

If you want to print a guide, you can take these steps to save paper and ink:

- Save ink or toner by not printing the cover page.
- Save color ink on a color printer by looking in the panes of the Print dialog for an option to print in grays or black and white.
- Reduce the bulk of the printed document and save paper by printing more than one page per sheet of paper. In the Print dialog, change Scale to 115% (155% for *Getting Started*). Then choose Layout from the untitled pop-up menu. If your printer supports two-sided (duplex) printing, select one of the Two-Sided options. Otherwise, choose 2 from the Pages per Sheet pop-up menu, and optionally choose Single Hairline from the Border menu. (If you're using Mac OS X v10.4 or earlier, the Scale setting is in the Page Setup dialog and the Layout settings are in the Print dialog.)

You may want to enlarge the printed pages even if you don't print double sided, because the PDF page size is smaller than standard printer paper. In the Print dialog or Page Setup dialog, try changing Scale to 115% (155% for *Getting Started*, which has CD-size pages).

Getting Documentation Updates

Periodically, Apple posts revised help pages and new editions of guides. Some revised help pages update the latest editions of the guides.

- To view new onscreen help topics for a server application, make sure your server or administrator computer is connected to the Internet and click “Latest help topics” or “Staying current” in the main help page for the application.
- To download the latest guides in PDF format, go to the Mac OS X Server documentation website:
www.apple.com/server/documentation

Getting Additional Information

For more information, consult these resources:

- *Read Me documents*—important updates and special information. Look for them on the server discs.
- *Mac OS X Server website* (www.apple.com/server/macosx)—gateway to extensive product and technology information.
- *Mac OS X Server Support website* (www.apple.com/support/macosxserver)—access to hundreds of articles from Apple’s support organization.
- *Apple Service & Support website* (www.apple.com/support)—access to hundreds of articles from Apple’s support organization.
- *Apple Training website* (www.apple.com/training)—instructor-led and self-paced courses for honing your server administration skills.
- *Apple Discussions website* (discussions.apple.com)—a way to share questions, knowledge, and advice with other administrators.
- *Apple Mailing Lists website* (www.lists.apple.com)—subscribe to mailing lists so you can communicate with other administrators using email.
- *OpenLDAP website* (www.openldap.org)—learn about the open source software that Open Directory uses to provide LDAP directory service.
- *MIT Kerberos website* (web.mit.edu/kerberos/www)—get background information and specifications for the protocol that Open Directory uses to provide robust single sign-on authentication.
- *Berkeley DB website* (www.sleepycat.com)—investigate feature descriptions and technical documentation for the open source database that Open Directory uses to store LDAP directory data.
- *RFC3377, “Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (v3): Technical Specification”* (www.rfc-editor.org/rfc/rfc3377.txt)—lists a set of eight other Request for Comment (RFC) documents with overview information and detailed specifications for the LDAPv3 protocol.

Directory Services with Open Directory

1

A directory service provides a central repository for information about computer users and network resources in an organization.

Benefits of Using Directory Services

Storing administrative data in a central repository has many benefits:

- Reduces data entry effort
- Certifies that network services and clients have consistent information about users and resources
- Simplifies administration of users and resources
- Provides identification, authentication, and authorization information for other network services

In education and enterprise environments, directory services are the ideal way to manage users and computing resources. Organizations with as few as 10 people can benefit by deploying a directory service.

Directory services are doubly beneficial: they simplify system and network administration, and they simplify a user's experience on the network.

With directory services, administrators can maintain information about all users—such as their names, passwords, and locations of network home directories—centrally rather than on each computer. Directory services can also maintain centralized information about printers, computers, and other network resources.

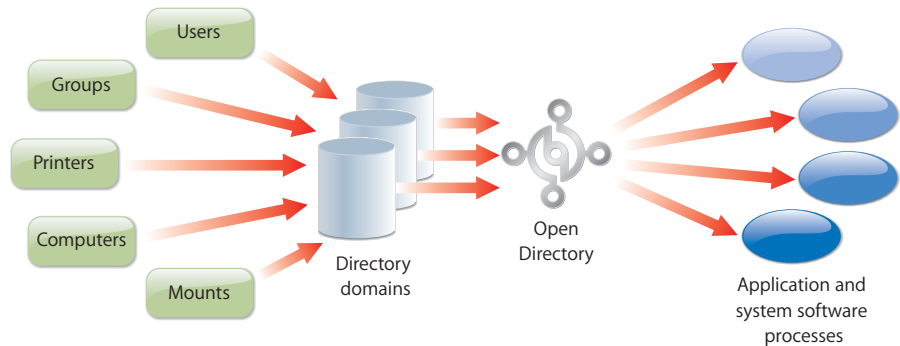
Centralizing information about users and resources can reduce the system administrator's information management burden, and each user has a centralized user account for logging in on any authorized computer on the network.

With centralized directory service and file service set up to host network home folders, wherever a user logs in, the user gets the same home folder, personal desktop, and individual preferences. The user always has access to personal networked files and can easily locate and use authorized network resources.

Directory Services and Directory Domains

A directory service acts as an intermediary between application and system software processes, which need information about users and resources, and the *directory domains* that store the information.

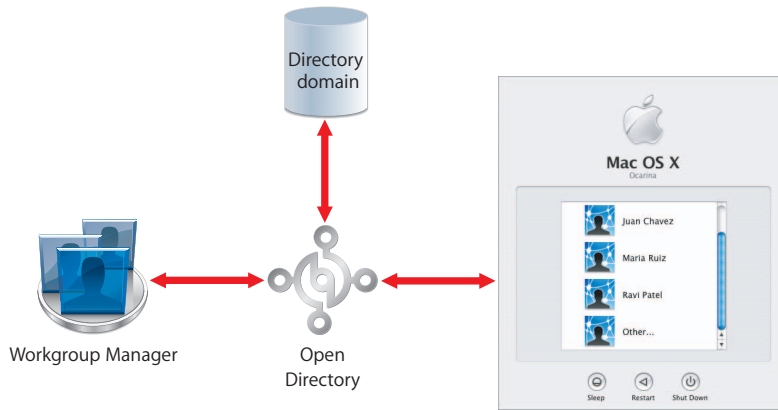
As shown in the following illustration, Open Directory provides directory services for Mac OS X and Mac OS X Server.



Open Directory can access information in one or several directory domains. A directory domain stores information in a specialized database that is optimized to handle many requests for information and to find and retrieve information quickly.

Processes running on Mac OS X computers can use Open Directory services to save information in directory domains. For example, when you create a user account with Workgroup Manager, it has Open Directory store user name and other account information in a directory domain. You can then review user account information in Workgroup Manager, which uses Open Directory to retrieve the user information from a directory domain.

Other application and system software processes can also use the user account information stored in directory domains. When someone attempts to log in to a Mac OS X computer, the login process uses Open Directory services to validate the user name and password:

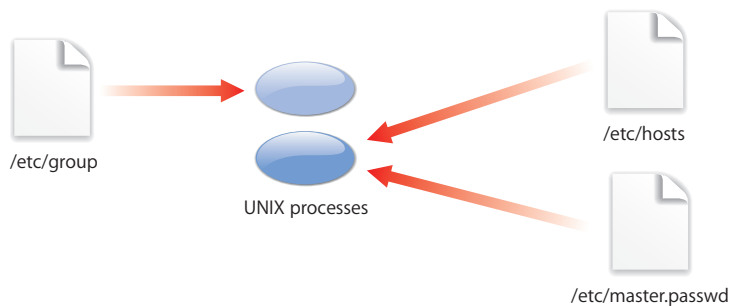


A Historical Perspective

Like Mac OS X, Open Directory has a UNIX heritage. Open Directory provides access to administrative data that UNIX systems have generally kept in configuration files, which require painstaking work to maintain. (Some UNIX systems still rely on configuration files.) Open Directory consolidates the data and distributes it for ease of access and maintenance.

Data Consolidation

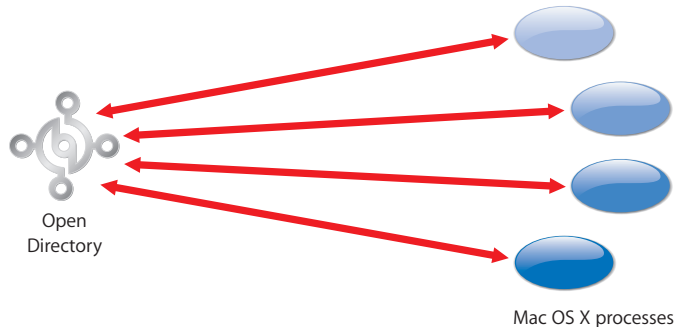
For years, UNIX systems have stored administrative information in a collection of files located in the `/etc` directory, as show in the following illustration.



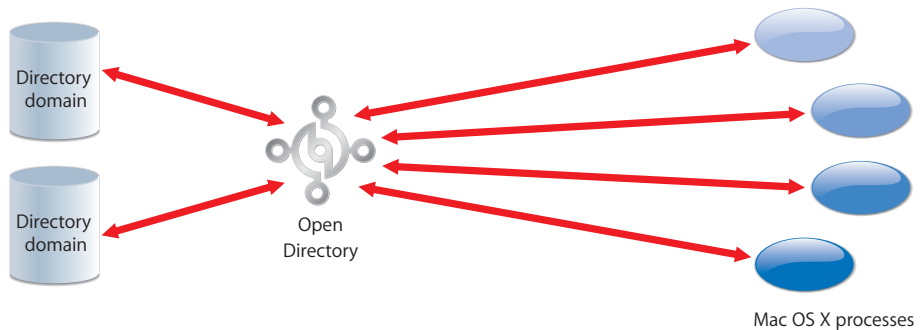
This scheme requires each UNIX computer to have its own set of files, and processes that are running on a UNIX computer read its files when they need administrative information.

If you're experienced with UNIX, you probably know about the files in the `/etc` directory—`group`, `hosts`, `hosts.equiv`, `master.passwd`, and so forth. For example, a UNIX process that needs a user's password consults the `/etc/master.passwd` file. The `/etc/master.passwd` file contains a record for each user account. A UNIX process that needs group information consults the `/etc/group` file.

Open Directory consolidates administrative information, simplifying the interactions between processes and the administrative data they create and use:



Processes no longer need to know how and where administrative data is stored. Open Directory gets the data for them. If a process needs the location of a user's home folder, the process has Open Directory retrieve the information. Open Directory finds the requested information and then returns it, insulating the process from the details of how the information is stored, as shown in the following illustration.



If you set up Open Directory to access administrative data from more than one directory domain, Open Directory consults them as needed.

Some data stored in a directory domain is identical to data stored in UNIX configuration files. For example, the home folder location, real name, user ID, and group ID are stored in the user records of a directory domain instead of the standard `/etc/passwd` file.

However, a directory domain stores much more data to support functions that are unique to Mac OS X, such as support for managing Mac OS X client computers.

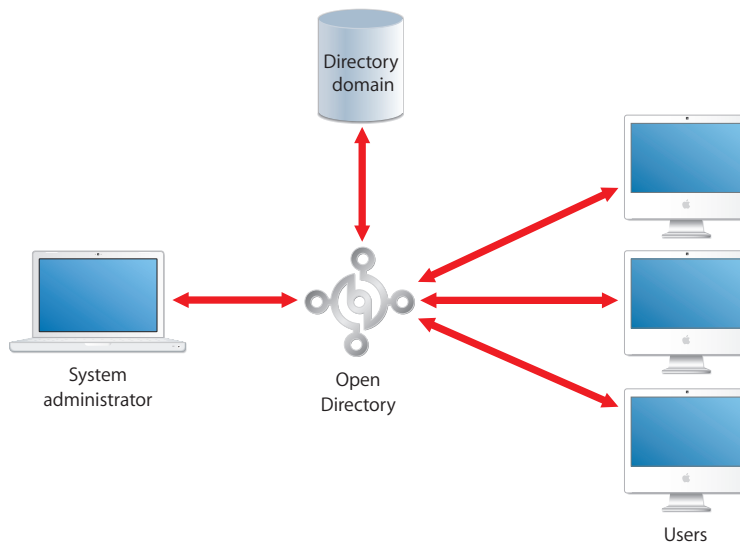
Data Distribution

A characteristic of UNIX configuration files is that the administrative data they contain is available only to the computer they are stored on. Each computer has its own UNIX configuration files.

With UNIX configuration files, each computer that someone wants to use must have that person's user account settings stored on it, and each computer must store the account settings for every person who can use the computer. To set up a computer's network settings, the administrator must go to the computer and enter the IP address and other information that identifies the computer on the network.

Similarly, when user or network information must be changed in UNIX configuration files, the administrator must make the changes on the computer where the files reside. Some changes, such as network settings, require the administrator to make the same changes on multiple computers. This approach becomes unwieldy as networks grow in size and complexity.

Open Directory solves this problem by letting you store administrative data in a directory domain that can be managed by a network administrator from one location. Open Directory lets you distribute the information so it is visible on a network to the computers that need it and the administrator who manages it, as shown in the following illustration.



Uses of Directory Data

Open Directory makes it possible to consolidate and maintain network information easily in a directory domain, but this information has value only if application and system software processes running on network computers access the information.

Here are some ways in which Mac OS X system and application software use directory data:

- **Login:** Workgroup Manager can create user records in a directory domain, and these records can be used to authenticate users who log in to Mac OS X computers and Windows computers. When a user specifies a name and a password in the Mac OS X login window, the login process asks Open Directory to authenticate the name and password. Open Directory uses the name to find the user's account record in a directory domain and uses other data in the user record to validate the password.
- **Folder and file access:** After logging in, a user can access files and folders. Mac OS X uses other data from the user record to determine the user's access privileges for each file or folder.
- **Home folders:** Each user record in a directory domain stores the location of the user's home folder. This is where the user keeps personal files, folders, and preferences. A user's home folder can be located on a computer the user always uses or it can be located on a network file server.
- **Automount share points:** Share points can be configured to automount (appear automatically) in the /Network folder (the Network globe) in the Finder windows of client computers. Information about these automount share points is stored in a directory domain. Share points are folders, disks, or disk partitions you have made accessible over the network.
- **Mail account settings:** Each user's record in a directory domain specifies whether the user has mail service, which mail protocols to use, how to present incoming mail, whether to alert the user when mail arrives, and so forth.
- **Resource usage:** Disk, print, and mail quotas can be stored in each user record of a directory domain.
- **Managed client information:** The administrator can manage the Mac OS X environment of users whose account records are stored in a directory domain. The administrator makes mandatory preference settings that are stored in the directory domain and override users' personal preferences.
- **Group management:** In addition to user records, a directory domain also stores group records. Each group record affects all users who are in the group. Information in group records specifies preference settings for group members. Group records also determine access to files, folders, and computers.

- **Managed network views:** The administrator can set up custom views that users see when they select the Network icon in the sidebar of a Finder window. Because these managed network views are stored in a directory domain, they're available automatically when a user logs in.

Access to Directory Services

Open Directory can access directory domains for the following kinds of directory services:

- Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP), an open standard common in mixed environments of Macintosh, UNIX, and Windows systems. LDAP is the native directory service for shared directories in Mac OS X Server.
- Local directory domain, the local directory service for every Mac OS X and Mac OS X Server version 10.5 or later.
- Active Directory, the directory service of Microsoft Windows 2000 and 2003 servers.
- Network Information System (NIS), the directory service of many UNIX servers.
- BSD flat files, the legacy directory service of UNIX systems.

Inside a Directory Domain

Information in a directory domain is organized by *record type*. Record types are specific categories of information, such as users, groups, and computers. For each record type, a directory domain can contain any number of records. Each record is a collection of attributes, and each attribute has one or more values.

If you think of each record type as a spreadsheet that contains a category of information, then records are like the rows of the spreadsheet, attributes are like spreadsheet columns, and each spreadsheet cell contains one or more values.

For example, when you define a user account by using Workgroup Manager, you are creating a user record (a record of the “user” record type). The settings you configure for the user account—short name, full name, home folder location, and so on—become values of attributes in the user record. The user record and the values of its attributes reside in a directory domain.

In some directory services, such as LDAP and Active Directory, directory information is organized by *object class*. Like record types, object classes define categories of information. An object class defines similar information, named *entries*, by specifying attributes that an entry must or may contain.

For an object class, a directory domain can contain multiple entries, and each entry can contain multiple attributes. Some attributes have a single value, while others have multiple values. For example, the `inetOrgPerson` object class defines entries that contain user attributes.

The `inetOrgPerson` class is a standard LDAP class defined by RFC 2798. Other standard LDAP object classes and attributes are defined by RFC 2307. Open Directory's default object classes and attributes are based on these RFCs.

A collection of attributes and record types or object classes provides a blueprint for the information in a directory domain. This blueprint is named the *schema* of the directory domain. However, Open Directory uses a directory-based schema that is different from a locally based stored schema.

The challenge of using a locally based schema configuration file, with an Open Directory master that services replica servers, is that if you change or add an attribute to the locally based schema of a Open Directory master you must also make that change to each replica. Depending on the number of replicas you have, the manual update process might take an enormous amount of time.

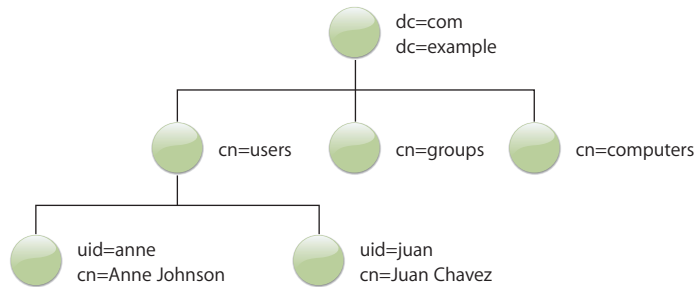
If you don't make the same schema change locally on each replica, your replica servers will generate errors and fail when values for the newly added attribute are sent to the replica servers.

To eliminate this possibility of failure Mac OS X uses a directory-based schema that is stored in the directory database and is automatically updated for each replica server from the replicated directory database. This keeps the schema for all replicas synchronized and provides greater flexibility to make changes to the schema.

Structure of LDAP Directory Information

In an LDAP directory, entries are arranged in a hierarchical tree-like structure. In some LDAP directories, this structure is based on geographic and organizational boundaries. More commonly, the structure is based on Internet domain names.

In a simple directory organization, entries representing users, groups, computers, and other object classes are immediately below the root level of the hierarchy, as shown here:



An entry is referenced by its *distinguished name* (DN), which is constructed by taking the name of the entry, referred to as the *relative distinguished name* (RDN), and concatenating the names of its ancestor entries. For example, the entry for Anne Johnson could have an RDN of uid=anne and a DN of uid=anne, cn=users, dc=example, dc=com.

The LDAP service retrieves data by searching the hierarchy of entries. The search can begin at any entry. The entry where the search begins is the *search base*.

You can specify a search base by giving the distinguished name of an entry in the LDAP directory. For example, the search base cn=users, dc=example, dc=com specifies that the LDAP service begin searching at the entry whose cn attribute has a value of “users.”

You can also specify how much of the LDAP hierarchy to search below the search base. The search scope can include all subtrees below the search base or the first level of entries below the search base. If you use command-line tools to search an LDAP directory, you can also restrict the search scope to include only the search base entry.

Local and Shared Directory Domains

Where you store your server's user information and other administrative data is determined by whether the data must be shared. This information can be stored in the server's local directory domain or in a shared directory domain.

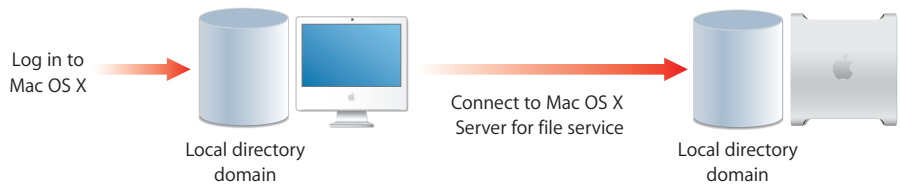
About the Local Directory Domain

Every Mac OS X computer has a local directory domain. A local directory domain's administrative data is visible *only* to applications and system software running on the computer where the domain resides. It is the first domain consulted when a user logs in or performs some other operation that requires data stored in a directory domain.

When the user logs in to a Mac OS X computer, Open Directory searches the computer's local directory domain for the user's record. If the local directory domain contains the user's record (and if the user entered the correct password), the login process proceeds and the user gets access to the computer.

After login, the user could choose "Connect to Server" from the Go menu and connect to Mac OS X Server for file service. In this case, Open Directory on the server searches for the user's record in the server's local directory domain.

If the server's local directory domain has a record for the user (and if the user enters the correct password), the server grants the user access to file services, as shown below:



When you set up a Mac OS X computer, its local directory domain is created and populated with records. For example, a user record is created for the user who performed the installation. It contains the user name and password entered during setup, and other information, such as a unique ID for the user and the location of the user's home folder.

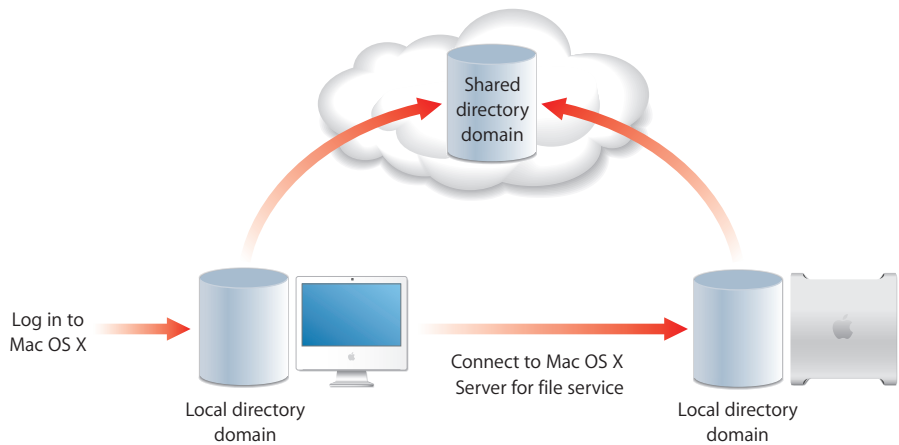
About Shared Directory Domains

Although Open Directory on any Mac OS X computer can store administrative data in the computer's local directory domain, the real power of Open Directory is that it lets multiple Mac OS X computers share administrative data by storing the data in shared directory domains.

When a computer is configured to use a shared domain, administrative data in the shared domain is also visible to applications and system software running on that computer.

If Open Directory does not find a user's record in the local directory domain of a Mac OS X computer, Open Directory can search for the user's record in any shared domains the computer has access to.

In the following example, the user can access both computers because the shared domain accessible from both computers contains a record for the user.

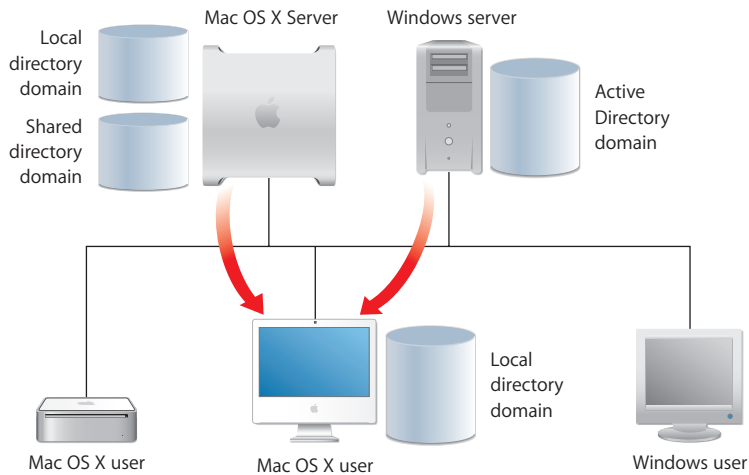


Shared domains generally reside on servers because directory domains store extremely important data, such as the data for authenticating users.

Access to servers is usually tightly restricted to protect the data on them. In addition, directory data must always be available. Servers often have extra hardware features that enhance their reliability, and servers can be connected to uninterruptible power sources.

Shared Data in Existing Directory Domains

Some organizations—such as universities and worldwide corporations—maintain user information and other administrative data in directory domains on UNIX or Windows servers. Open Directory can search these non-Apple domains and shared Open Directory domains of Mac OS X Server systems, as shown in the illustration below.



The order in which Mac OS X searches directory domains is configurable. A search policy determines the order in which Mac OS X searches directory domains. Search policies are explained in Chapter 2, “Open Directory Search Policies.”

SMB Services and Open Directory

You can configure your Mac OS X Server with Open Directory and SMB services to serve Windows based workstations. Using these services together, you can configure your Mac OS X Server to be a primary domain controller (PDC) or a backup domain controller (BDC).

Open Directory as a Primary Domain Controller

Mac OS X Server can be configured to serve as a Windows PDC, which enables users of Windows NT-compatible workstations to log in using domain accounts. A PDC gives each Windows user one user name and password for logging in from any Windows NT 4.x, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Vista workstation on the network. Then, instead of logging in with a user name and password that are defined locally on a workstation, each user can log in with the user name and password that are defined on the PDC.

The same user account that can be used for logging in from a Windows workstation can also be used for logging in from a Mac OS X computer. Therefore, someone who uses both platforms can have the same home folder, mail account, and print quotas on both platforms. Users can change their passwords while logging in to the Windows domain.

User accounts are stored in the server's LDAP directory with group, computer, and other information. The PDC has access to this directory information because you set up the PDC on a server that is an Open Directory master, which hosts an LDAP directory.

Further, the PDC uses the Open Directory master's Password Server to authenticate users when they log in to the Windows domain. The Password Server can validate passwords using NTLMv2, NTLMv1, LAN Manager, and other authentication methods.

The Open Directory master can also have a Kerberos Key Distribution Center (KDC). The PDC doesn't use Kerberos to authenticate users for Windows services, but mail and other services can be configured to use Kerberos to authenticate Windows workstation users who have accounts in the LDAP directory.

To have its password validated by the Open Directory Password Server and Kerberos, a user account must have a password type of Open Directory. A user account with a password type of crypt password can't be used for Windows services because a crypt password isn't validated using the NTLMv2, NTLMv1, or LAN Manager authentication methods.

The server can also have user accounts in its local directory domain. Every Mac OS X Server has one. The PDC doesn't use these accounts for Windows domain login, but the PDC can use these accounts to authenticate users for Windows file service and other services.

User accounts in the local directory domain that have a password type of shadow password can be used for Windows services because a shadow password can be validated using NTLMv2, NTLMv1, LAN Manager, and other authentication methods.

For compatibility, Mac OS X Server supports user accounts that were configured to use the legacy Authentication Manager technology for password validation in Mac OS X Server versions 10.0–10.2. After upgrading a server to Mac OS X Server version 10.5, existing users can continue to use their same passwords.

A user account uses Authentication Manager if the account is in a local directory domain that Authentication Manager has been enabled for, and if the account is set to use a crypt password.

If you migrate a directory from NetInfo to LDAP, all user accounts that used Authentication Manager for password validation are converted to have a password type of Open Directory.

When setting up Mac OS X Server as a PDC, make sure your network doesn't have another PDC with the same domain name. The network can have multiple Open Directory masters, but it can have only one PDC.

Open Directory as a BDC

Setting Mac OS X as a BDC provides failover and backup for the PDC. The PDC and BDC share Windows client requests for domain login and other directory and authentication services. If the Mac OS X Server PDC becomes unavailable, the Mac OS X Server BDC provides domain login and other directory and authentication services.

The BDC has a synchronized copy of the PDC's user, group, computer, and other directory data. The PDC and BDC also have synchronized copies of authentication data. Mac OS X Server automatically synchronizes the directory and authentication data.

Before setting up Mac OS X Server as a BDC, you must set up the server as an Open Directory replica. The BDC uses the read-only LDAP directory, Kerberos KDC, and Password Server of the Open Directory replica.

Mac OS X Server synchronizes the PDC and BDC by automatically updating the Open Directory replica with changes made to the Open Directory master.

You use Server Admin after installation to make Mac OS X Server an Open Directory replica and BDC. You can set up multiple BDCs, each on a separate Open Directory replica server.

Important: You must not have duplicate PDCs on a network.

Each computer has a search policy that specifies directory domains and the sequence in which Open Directory searches them.

Each Mac OS X computer has a *search policy*, also commonly referred to as a *search path*, that specifies which directory domains Open Directory can access, such as the computer's local directory domain and a particular shared directory.

The search policy also specifies the order in which Open Directory accesses directory domains. Open Directory searches each directory domain and stops searching when it finds a match. For example, Open Directory stops searching for a user record when it finds a record whose user name matches the name it's looking for.

Search Policy Levels

A search policy can include only the local directory domain, the local directory domain and a shared directory, or the local directory domain and multiple shared directories.

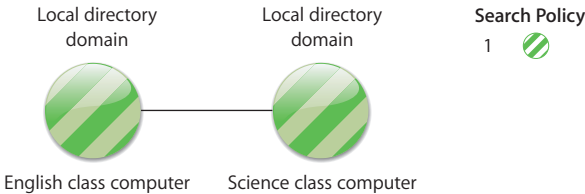
On a network with a shared directory, several computers generally access the shared directory. This arrangement can be depicted as a tree-like structure with the shared directory at the top and local directories at the bottom.

Local Directory Domain Search Policy

The simplest search policy consists only of a computer's local directory domain. In this case, Open Directory looks for user information and other administrative data only in the local directory domain of each computer.

If a server on the network hosts a shared directory, Open Directory does not look there for user information or administrative data because the shared directory is not part of the computer's search policy.

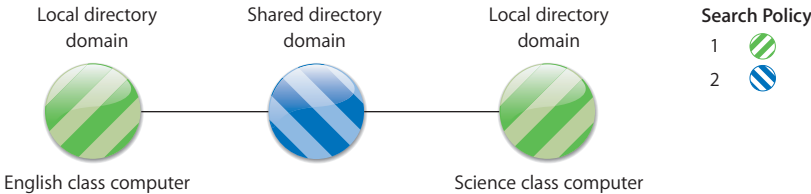
The following illustration shows two computers on a network that only search their local directory domain for administrative data.



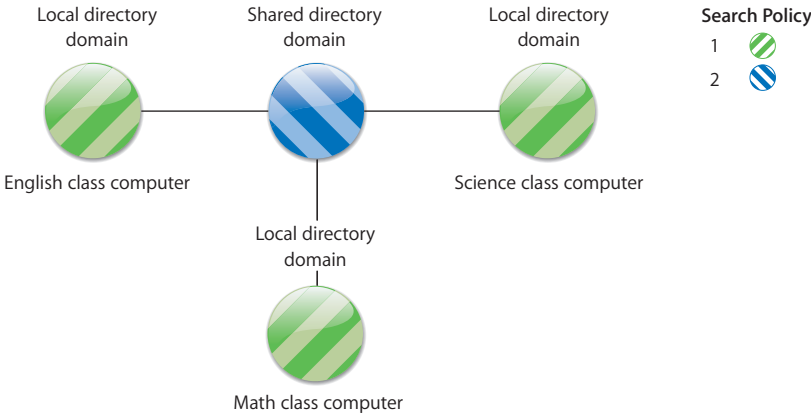
Two-Level Search Policies

If one server on the network hosts a shared directory, all computers on the network can include the shared directory in their search policies. In this case, Open Directory looks for user information and other administrative data first in the local directory domain. If Open Directory doesn't find the information it needs in the local directory domain, it looks in the shared directory.

The following illustration shows two computers and a shared directory domain on a network. The computers are connected to the shared directory domain and have it in their search policy.



Here's a scenario in which a two-level search policy might be used:

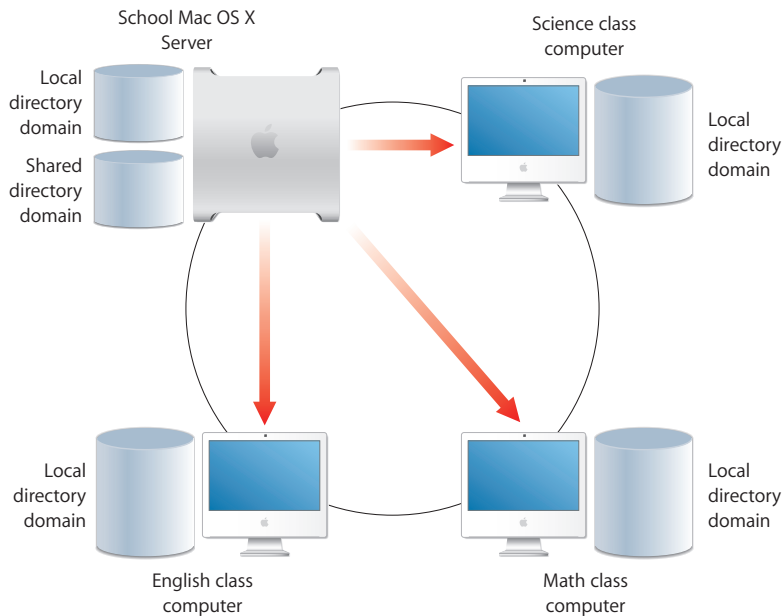


Each class (English, math, science) has its own computer. The students in each class are defined as users in the local domain of that class's computer. All three of these local domains have the same shared domain, in which all instructors are defined.

Instructors, as members of the shared domain, can log in to all class computers. The students in each local domain can log in to only the computer where their local account resides.

Local domains reside on their respective computers but a shared domain resides on a server accessible from the local domain's computer. When an instructor logs in to any of the three class computers and cannot be found in the local domain, Open Directory searches the shared domain.

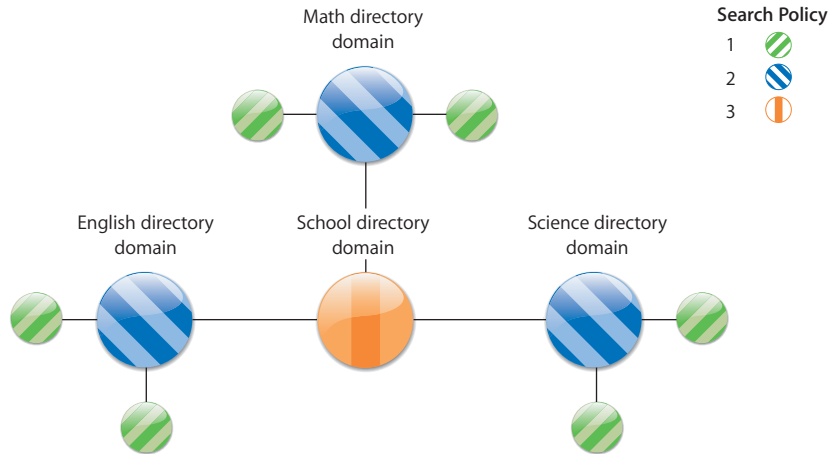
In the following example, there is only one shared domain, but in more complex networks, there may be more shared domains.



Multilevel Search Policies

If more than one server on the network hosts a shared directory, the computers on the network can include two or more shared directories in their search policies. As with simpler search policies, Open Directory always looks for user information and other administrative data first in the local directory domain. If Open Directory does not find the information it needs in the local directory domain, it searches each shared directory in the sequence specified by the search policy.

Here's a scenario in which more than one shared directory might be used:



Each class (English, math, science) has a server that hosts a shared directory domain. Each classroom computer's search policy specifies the computer's local domain, the class's shared domain, and the school's shared domain.

The students in each class are defined as users in the shared domain of that class's server, so each student can log in to any computer in the class. Because the instructors are defined in the shared domain of the school server, they can log in to any classroom computer.

You can affect an entire network or a group of computers by choosing the domain in which to define administrative data. The higher the administrative data resides in a search policy, the fewer places it needs to be changed as users and system resources change.

Probably the most important aspect of directory services for administrators is planning directory domains and search policies. These should reflect the resources you want to share, the users you want to share them among, and the way you want to manage your directory data.

Automatic Search Policies

Mac OS X computers can be configured to set search policies automatically. An automatic search policy consists of two parts, one of which is optional:

- Local directory domain
- Shared LDAP directory (optional)

A computer's automatic search policy always begins with the computer's local directory domain. If a Mac OS X computer is not connected to a network, the computer searches its local directory domain for user accounts and other administrative data.

The automatic search policy then determines whether the computer is configured to connect to a shared local directory domain. The computer can be connected to a shared local directory domain, which can in turn be connected to another shared local directory domain, and so on.

A local directory domain connection, if any, constitutes the second part of the automatic search policy. For more information, see "About the Local Directory Domain" on page 28.

Finally, a computer with an automatic search policy can connect to a shared LDAP directory. When the computer starts, it can get the address of an LDAP directory server from DHCP service. The DHCP service of Mac OS X Server can supply an LDAP server address in the same way it supplies the addresses of DNS servers and a router.

(A non-Apple DHCP service can also supply an LDAP server address. This feature is known as DHCP option 95.)

If you want the DHCP service of Mac OS X Server to supply clients with an LDAP server's address for automatic search policies, configure the LDAP options of DHCP service. For more information, see the DHCP chapter in *Network Services Administration*.

If you want a Mac OS X computer to get the address of an LDAP server from DHCP service:

- The computer must be configured to use an automatic search policy. This includes selecting the option to add DHCP-supplied LDAP directories. For more information, see "Using Advanced Search Policy Settings" on page 128 and "Enabling or Disabling Use of a DHCP-Supplied LDAP Directory" on page 134.
- The computer's network preferences must be configured to use DHCP or DHCP with manual IP address. Mac OS X is initially configured to use DHCP. For information about setting network preferences, search Mac Help.

An automatic search policy offers convenience and flexibility, especially for mobile computers. If a computer with an automatic search policy is disconnected from the network, connected to a different network, or moved to a different subnet, the automatic search policy can change.

If the computer is disconnected from the network, it uses its local directory domain. If the computer is connected to a different network or subnet, it can automatically change its local directory domain connection and can get an LDAP server address from the DHCP service on the current subnet.

With an automatic search policy, a computer doesn't need to be reconfigured to get directory and authentication services in its new location.

Important: If you configure Mac OS X to use an automatic authentication search policy and a DHCP-supplied LDAP server or a DHCP-supplied local directory domain, you increase the risk of an attacker gaining control of your computer. The risk is higher if your computer is configured to connect to a wireless network. For more information, see “Protecting Computers from a Malicious DHCP Server” on page 131.

Custom Search Policies

If you don't want a Mac OS X computer to use the automatic search policy supplied by DHCP, you can define a custom search policy for the computer.

For example, a custom search policy could specify that an Active Directory domain be searched before an Open Directory server's shared directory domain. Users can configure their computer to log in using their user records from the Active Directory domain and have their preferences managed by group and computer records from the Open Directory domain.

A custom search policy generally does not work in multiple network locations or while not connected to a network because it relies on the availability of specific directory domains on a particular network.

If a portable computer is disconnected from its usual network, it no longer has access to the shared directory domains on its custom search policy. However, the disconnected computer still has access to its own local directory domain because it is the first directory domain on every search policy.

The portable computer user can log in using a user record from the local directory domain, which can include mobile user accounts. These mirror user accounts from the shared directory domain that the portable computer accesses when it's connected to its usual network.

Search Policies for Authentication and Contacts

A Mac OS X computer has a search policy for finding authentication information and it has a separate search policy for finding contact information:

- Open Directory uses the authentication search policy to locate and retrieve user authentication information and other administrative data from directory domains.
- Open Directory uses the contacts search policy to locate and retrieve name, address, and other contact information from directory domains. Mac OS X Address Book uses this contact information, and other applications can be programmed to use it as well.

Each search policy can be automatic, custom, or local directory domain only.

Open Directory offers several options for authenticating users whose accounts are stored in directory domains on Mac OS X Server, including Kerberos and the traditional authentication methods that network services require.

Open Directory can authenticate users by one or more of the following methods:

- Kerberos authentication for single sign-on
- Traditional authentication methods and a password stored securely in the Open Directory Password Server database
- Traditional authentication methods and a shadow password stored in a secure shadow password file for each user
- A crypt password stored directly in the user's account, for backward compatibility with legacy systems
- A non-Apple LDAP server for LDAP bind authentication

In addition, Open Directory lets you set up a password policy for all users and specific password policies for each user, such as automatic password expiration and minimum password length. (Password policies do not apply to administrators, crypt password authentication, or LDAP bind authentication.)

Password Types

Each user account has a password type that determines how the user account is authenticated. In a local directory domain, the standard password type is shadow password. On a server upgraded from Mac OS X Server version 10.3, user accounts in the local directory domain can also have an Open Directory password type.

For user accounts in the LDAP directory of Mac OS X Server, the standard password type is Open Directory. User accounts in the LDAP directory can also have a password type of crypt password.

Authentication and Authorization

Services such as the login window and Apple file service request user authentication from Open Directory. *Authentication* is part of the process by which a service determines whether it should grant a user access to a resource. Usually this process also requires *authorization*.

Authentication proves a user's identity, and authorization determines what the authenticated user is permitted to do. A user typically authenticates by providing a valid name and password. A service can then authorize the authenticated user to access specific resources. For example, file service authorizes full access to folders and files that an authenticated user owns.

You experience authentication and authorization when you use a credit card. The merchant authenticates you by comparing your signature on the sales slip to the signature on your credit card. Then the merchant submits your authorized credit card account number to the bank, which authorizes payment based on your account balance and credit limit.

Open Directory authenticates user accounts, and service access control lists (SACLs) authorize use of services. If Open Directory authenticates you, the SACL for login window determines whether you can log in, the SACL for Apple Filing Protocol (AFP) service determines whether you can connect for file service, and so on.

Some services also determine whether a user is authorized to access particular resources. This authorization can require retrieving other user account information from the directory domain. For example, AFP service needs the user ID and group membership information to determine which folders and files the user is authorized to read and write.

Open Directory Passwords

When a user's account has a password type of Open Directory, the user can be authenticated by Kerberos or the Open Directory Password Server. Kerberos is a network authentication system that uses credentials issued by a trusted server. Open Directory Password Server supports the traditional password authentication methods that some clients of network services require.

Neither Kerberos nor Open Directory Password Server stores the password in the user's account. Both Kerberos and Open Directory Password Server store passwords in secure databases apart from the directory domain, and passwords can never be read. Passwords can only be set and verified.

Malicious users might attempt to log in over the network hoping to gain access to Kerberos and Open Directory Password Server. Open Directory logs can alert you to unsuccessful login attempts. (See "Viewing Open Directory Status and Logs" on page 178.)

User accounts in the following directory domains can have Open Directory passwords:

- The LDAP directory of Mac OS X Server
- The local directory domain of Mac OS X Server

Note: Open Directory passwords can't be used to log in to Mac OS X version 10.1 or earlier. Users who log in using the login window of Mac OS X v10.1 or earlier must be configured to use crypt passwords. The password type doesn't matter for other services. For example, a user of Mac OS X v10.1 could authenticate for Apple file service with an Open Directory password.

Shadow Passwords

Shadow passwords support the same traditional authentication methods as Open Directory Password Server. These authentication methods are used to send shadow passwords over the network in a scrambled form, or *hash*.

A shadow password is stored as several hashes in a file on the same computer as the directory domain where the user account resides. Because the password is not stored in the user account, the password is not easy to capture over the network. Each user's shadow password is stored in a different file, named a *shadow password file*, and these files are protected so they can be read only by the root user account.

Only user accounts that are stored in a computer's local directory domain can have a shadow password. User accounts that are stored in a shared directory can't have a shadow password.

Shadow passwords also provide cached authentication for mobile user accounts. For complete information about mobile user accounts, see *User Management*.

Crypt Passwords

A crypt password is stored in a hash in the user account. This strategy, historically named *basic authentication*, is most compatible with software that needs to access user records directly. For example, Mac OS X version 10.1 or earlier expect to find a crypt password stored in the user account.

Crypt authentication supports a maximum password length of eight bytes (eight ASCII characters). If a longer password is entered in a user account, only the first eight bytes are used for crypt password validation. Shadow passwords and Open Directory passwords are not subject to this length limit.

For secure transmission of passwords over a network, crypt supports the DHX authentication method.

Providing Secure Authentication for Windows Users

Mac OS X Server also offers the same types of secure passwords for Windows users:

- Open Directory passwords are required for domain login from a Windows workstation to a Mac OS X Server PDC and can be used to authenticate for Windows file service. This type of password can be validated using many authentication methods, including NTLMv2, NTLMv1, and LAN Manager. Open Directory passwords are stored in a secure database, not in user accounts.
- Shadow passwords can't be used for domain login but they can be used for Windows file service and other services. This type of password can also be validated using NTLMv2, NTLMv1, and LAN Manager authentication methods. Shadow passwords are stored in secure files, not in user accounts.
- A crypt password with Authentication Manager enabled provides compatibility for user accounts on a server that has been upgraded from Mac OS X Server version 10.1. After upgrading the server to Mac OS X Server version 10.5, these user accounts should be changed to use Open Directory passwords, which are more secure than the legacy Authentication Manager.

Offline Attacks on Passwords

Because crypt passwords are stored in user accounts, they are potentially subject to attack.

User accounts in a shared directory domain are accessible on the network. Anyone on the network who has Workgroup Manager or knows how to use command-line tools can read the contents of user accounts, including crypt passwords stored in them.

Open Directory passwords and shadow passwords aren't stored in user accounts, so these passwords can't be read from directory domains.

A malicious attacker, or cracker, could use Workgroup Manager or UNIX commands to copy user records to a file. The cracker can then transport this file to a system and use various techniques to decode crypt passwords stored in the user records. After decoding a crypt password, the cracker can log in unnoticed with a legitimate user name and crypt password.

This form of attack is known as an offline attack because it does not require successive login attempts to gain access to a system.

An effective way to thwart password cracking is to use good passwords and avoid using crypt passwords. A password should contain letters, numbers, and symbols in combinations that can't be easily guessed by unauthorized users.

Good passwords should not consist of actual words. They can include digits and symbols (such as # or \$), or they can consist of the first letter of all words in a phrase. Use both uppercase and lowercase letters.

Shadow passwords and Open Directory passwords are far less susceptible to offline attack because they are not stored in user records.

Shadow passwords are stored in separate files that can be read only by someone who knows the password of the root user account (also known as the system administrator).

Open Directory passwords are stored securely in the Kerberos KDC and in the Open Directory Password Server database. A user's Open Directory password can't be read by other users, not even by a user with administrator rights for Open Directory authentication. (This administrator can change only Open Directory passwords and password policies.)

Crypt passwords are not considered secure. They should be used only for user accounts that must be compatible with UNIX clients that require them, or for Mac OS X v10.1 clients. Being stored in user accounts, they're too accessible and therefore subject to offline attack (see "Offline Attacks on Passwords"). Although stored in an encoded form, they're relatively easy to decode.

How Crypt Passwords Are Encrypted

Crypt passwords are not stored in clear text; they are concealed and made unreadable by encryption. A crypt password is encrypted by supplying the clear text password with a random number to a mathematical function, known as a one-way hash function. A one-way hash function always generates the same encrypted value from particular input but cannot be used to recreate the original password from the encrypted output it generates.

To validate a password using the encrypted value, Mac OS X applies the function to the password entered by the user and compares it with the value stored in the user account or shadow file. If the values match, the password is considered valid.

Determining Which Authentication Option to Use

To authenticate a user, Open Directory must determine which authentication option to use—Kerberos, Open Directory Password Server, shadow password, or crypt password. The user's account contains information that specifies which authentication option to use. This information is named the *authentication authority attribute*.

Open Directory uses the name provided by the user to locate the user's account in the directory domain. Then Open Directory consults the authentication authority attribute in the user's account and learns which authentication option to use.

You can change a user's authentication authority attribute by changing the password type in the Advanced pane of Workgroup Manager, as shown in the following table. For more information, see "Changing a User's Password Type" on page 108.

Password type	Authentication authority	Attribute in user record
Open Directory	Open Directory Password Server and Kerberos ¹	Either or both: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• ;ApplePasswordServer;• ;Kerberosv5;
Shadow password	Password file for each user, readable only by the root user account	Either: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• ;ShadowHash;²• ;ShadowHash;<list of enabled authentication methods>
Crypt password	Encoded password in user record	Either: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• ;basic;• no attribute at all

¹ User accounts from Mac OS X Server v10.2 must be reset to include the Kerberos authentication authority attribute. See "Enabling Single Sign-On Kerberos Authentication for a User" on page 111.

² If the attribute in the user record is ShadowHash; without a list of enabled authentication methods, default authentication methods are enabled. The list of default authentication methods is different for Mac OS X Server and Mac OS X.

The authentication authority attribute can specify multiple authentication options. For example, a user account with an Open Directory password type normally has an authentication authority attribute that specifies both Kerberos and Open Directory Password Server.

A user account doesn't need to include an authentication authority attribute. If a user's account contains no authentication authority attribute, Mac OS X Server assumes a crypt password is stored in the user's account. For example, user accounts created using Mac OS X version 10.1 or earlier contain a crypt password but not an authentication authority attribute.

Password Policies

Open Directory enforces password policies for users whose password type is Open Directory or shadow password. For example, a user's password policy can specify a password expiration interval. If the user is logging in and Open Directory determines that the user's password has expired, the user must replace the expired password. Then Open Directory can authenticate the user.

Password policies can disable a user account on a certain date, after a number of days, after a period of inactivity, or after a number of failed login attempts. Password policies can also require passwords to be a minimum length, contain at least one letter, contain at least one numeral, differ from the account name, differ from recent passwords, or be changed periodically.

The password policy for a mobile user account applies when the account is used while disconnected from the network and while connected to the network. A mobile user account's password policy is cached for use while offline. For more information about mobile user accounts, see *User Management*.

Password policies do not affect administrator accounts. Administrators are exempt from password policies because they can change the policies at will. In addition, enforcing password policies on administrators could subject them to denial-of-service attacks.

Kerberos and Open Directory Password Server maintain password policies separately. An Open Directory server synchronizes the Kerberos password policy rules with Open Directory Password Server password policy rules.

Single Sign-On Authentication

Mac OS X Server uses Kerberos for *single sign-on* authentication, which relieves users from entering a name and password separately for every service. With single sign-on, a user always enters a name and password in the login window. Thereafter, the user does not need to enter a name and password for Apple file service, mail service, or other services that use Kerberos authentication.

To take advantage of single sign-on, users and services must be *Kerberized*—configured for Kerberos authentication—and use the same Kerberos KDC server.

User accounts that reside in an LDAP directory of Mac OS X Server and have a password type of Open Directory use the server's built-in KDC. These user accounts are automatically configured for Kerberos and single sign-on. The server's Kerberized services use the server's built-in KDC and are configured for single sign-on.

This Mac OS X Server KDC can also authenticate users for services provided by other servers. Having more servers with Mac OS X Server use the Mac OS X Server KDC requires only minimal configuration.

Kerberos Authentication

Kerberos was developed at MIT to provide secure authentication and communication over open networks like the Internet. It's named for the three-headed dog that guarded the entrance to the underworld of Greek mythology.

Kerberos provides proof of identity for two parties. It enables you to prove who you are to network services you want to use. It also proves to your applications that network services are genuine, not spoofed.

Like other authentication systems, Kerberos does not provide authorization. Each network service determines what you are permitted to do based on your proven identity.

Kerberos permits a client and a server to identify each other much more securely than typical challenge-response password authentication methods. Kerberos also provides a single sign-on environment where users authenticate only once a day, week, or other period of time, thereby easing authentication frequency.

Mac OS X Server offers integrated Kerberos support that virtually anyone can deploy. In fact, Kerberos deployment is so automatic that users and administrators may not realize it's deployed.

Mac OS X v10.3 and later use Kerberos automatically when someone logs in using an account set for Open Directory authentication. It is the default setting for user accounts in the Mac OS X Server LDAP directory. Other services provided by the LDAP directory server, such as AFP and mail service, also use Kerberos automatically.

If your network has other servers with Mac OS X Server v10.5, joining them to the Kerberos server is easy, and most of their services use Kerberos automatically.

Alternatively, if your network has a Kerberos system such as Microsoft Active Directory, you can set up your Mac OS X Server and Mac OS X computers to use it for authentication.

Mac OS X Server and Mac OS X version 10.3 or later support Kerberos version 5. Mac OS X Server and Mac OS X version 10.5 do not support Kerberos version 4.

Breaking the Barriers to Kerberos Deployment

Until recently Kerberos was a technology for universities and government sites. It wasn't more widely deployed because adoption barriers needed to be taken down.

Mac OS X and Mac OS X Server v10.3 or later eliminate the following historical barriers to adoption of Kerberos:

- An Administrator had to set up a Kerberos KDC. This was difficult to deploy and administer.
- There was no standard integration with a directory system. Kerberos only does authentication. It doesn't store user account data such as user ID (UID), home folder location, or group membership. The administrator had to determine how to integrate Kerberos with a directory system.
- Servers had to be registered with the Kerberos KDC. This added an extra step to the server setup process.
- After setting up a Kerberos server, the administrator had to visit all client computers and configure each one to use Kerberos. This was time-consuming and required editing configuration files and using command-line tools.
- You needed a suite of Kerberized applications (server and client software). Some of the basics were available but porting them and adapting them to work with your environment was difficult.
- Not all network protocols used for client-server authentication are Kerberos-enabled. Some network protocols still require traditional challenge-response authentication methods and there is no standard way to integrate Kerberos with these legacy network authentication methods.
- Kerberos client supports failover so if one KDC is offline it can use a replica, but the administrator had to figure out how to set up a Kerberos replica.
- Administration tools were never integrated. Tools for creating and editing user accounts in the directory domain didn't know anything about Kerberos, and the Kerberos tools knew nothing about user accounts in directories. Setting up a user record was a site-specific operation based on how the KDC was integrated with the directory system.

Single Sign-On Experience

Kerberos is a credential or ticket-based system. The user logs in once to the Kerberos system and is issued a ticket with a life span. During the life span of this ticket the user doesn't need to authenticate again to access a Kerberized service.

The user's Kerberized client software, such as the Mac OS X Mail application, presents a valid Kerberos ticket to authenticate the user for a Kerberized service. This provides a single sign-on experience.

A Kerberos ticket is like a press pass to a jazz festival held at multiple nightclubs over a three-day weekend. You prove your identity once to get the pass. Until the pass expires, you can show it at any nightclub to get a ticket for a performance. All participating nightclubs accept your pass without seeing your proof of identity again.

Secure Authentication

The Internet is inherently insecure, yet few authentication protocols provide real security. Malicious hackers can use readily available software tools to intercept passwords being sent over a network.

Many applications send passwords unencrypted, and these are ready to use as soon as they're intercepted. Even encrypted passwords are not completely safe. Given enough time and computing power, encrypted passwords can be cracked.

To isolate passwords on your private network you can use a firewall can be used, but this does not solve all problems. For example, a firewall does not provide security against disgruntled or malicious insiders.

Kerberos was designed to solve network security problems. It never transmits the user's password across the network, nor does it save the password in the user's computer memory or on disk. Therefore, even if the Kerberos credentials are cracked or compromised, the attacker does not learn the original password, so he or she can potentially compromise only a small portion of the network.

In addition to superior password management, Kerberos is also mutually authenticated. The client authenticates to the service, and the service authenticates to the client. A man-in-the-middle or spoofing attack is impossible when you are using Kerberized services, and that means users can trust the services they are accessing.

Ready to Move Beyond Passwords

Network authentication is difficult: To deploy a network authentication method both the client and server must agree on the authentication method. And although it is possible for client/server processes to agree on a custom authentication method, getting pervasive adoption across a suite of network protocols, platforms, and clients is virtually impossible.

For example, suppose you wanted to deploy smart cards as a network authentication method. Without Kerberos, you'd have to change every client/server protocol to support the new method. The list of protocols includes SMTP, POP, IMAP, AFP, SMB, HTTP, FTP, IPP, SSH, QuickTime Streaming, DNS, LDAP, local directory domain, RPC, NFS, AFS, WebDAV, and LPR, and goes on and on.

Considering all the software that does network authentication, deploying a new authentication method across the entire suite of network protocols would be a daunting task. Although this might be feasible for software from one vendor, you'd be unlikely to get all vendors to change their client software to use your new method. Furthermore, you'd probably also want your authentication to work on multiple platforms (such as Mac OS X, Windows, and UNIX).

Due to the design of Kerberos, a client/server binary/protocol that supports Kerberos doesn't even know how the user proves identity. Therefore you only need to change the Kerberos client and the Kerberos server to accept a new proof of identity such as a smart card. As a result, your entire Kerberos network has now adopted the new proof-of-identity method, without deploying new versions of client and server software.

Multiplatform Authentication

Kerberos is available on every major platform, including Mac OS X, Windows, Linux, and other UNIX variants.

Centralized Authentication

Kerberos provides a central authentication authority for the network. All Kerberos-enabled services and clients use this central authority. Administrators can centrally audit and control authentication policies and operations.

Kerberized Services

Kerberos can authenticate users for the following services of Mac OS X Server:

- Login window
- Mail service
- AFP file service
- FTP file service
- SMB file service (as a member of an Active Directory Kerberos realm)
- VPN service
- Apache web service
- LDAP directory service
- iChat service
- Print service
- NFS file service
- Xgrid

These services have been *Kerberized* whether they are running or not. Only services that have been Kerberized can use Kerberos to authenticate a user. Mac OS X Server includes command-line tools for Kerberizing other services that are compatible with MIT-based Kerberos. For more information, see the Open Directory chapter of *Command-Line Administration*.

Configuring Services for Kerberos After Upgrading

After upgrading to Mac OS X Server version 10.5, you may need to configure some services to use single sign-on Kerberos authentication. These services either weren't configured to use Kerberos or weren't included with the earlier version of Mac OS X Server.

If this condition exists, a message about it appears when you connect to the server in Server Admin. The message appears in the Overview pane when you select the server (not a service) in the Servers list.

To configure new and upgraded services to use Kerberos:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the upgraded server.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 4 Click Settings, then click General.
- 5 Click Kerberize Services, then enter the name and password of an LDAP directory administrator account.

Services that were already configured to use Kerberos are not affected.

Kerberos Principals and Realms

Kerberized services are configured to authenticate *principals* who are known to a particular Kerberos *realm*. You can think of a realm as a particular Kerberos database or authentication domain, which contains validation data for users, services, and sometimes servers, which are all known as principals.

For example, a realm contains principals' secret keys, which are the result of a one-way function applied to passwords.

Service principals are generally based on randomly generated secrets rather than passwords.

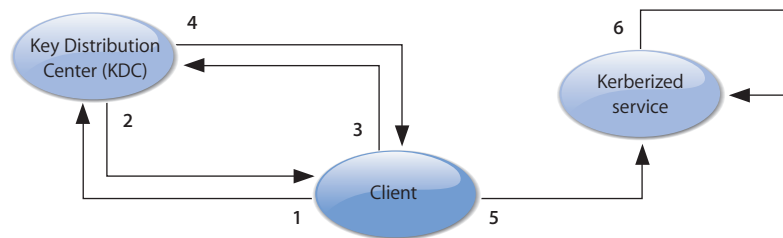
Here are examples of realm and principal names. Realm names are capitalized by convention to distinguish them from DNS domain names:

- Realm: MYREALM.EXAMPLE.COM
- User principal: jsanchez@MYREALM.EXAMPLE.COM
- Service principal: afpserver/somehost.example.com@MYREALM.EXAMPLE.COM

Kerberos Authentication Process

There are several phases to Kerberos authentication. In the first phase, the client obtains credentials to be used to request access to Kerberized services. In the second phase, the client requests authentication for a specific service. In the final phase, the client presents those credentials to the service.

The following illustration summarizes these activities. The service and the client can be the same entity (such as the login window) or two different entities (such as a mail client and the mail server).



- 1 The client authenticates to a Kerberos KDC, which interacts with realms to access authentication data. This is the only step in which passwords and associated password policy information are checked.
- 2 The KDC issues a ticket-granting ticket to the client. The ticket is the credential needed when the client wants to use Kerberized services and is good for a configurable period of time, but it can be revoked before expiration. It is cached on the client until it expires.

- 3 The client contacts the KDC with the ticket-granting ticket when it wants to use a Kerberized service.
- 4 The KDC issues a ticket for that service.
- 5 The client presents the ticket to the service.
- 6 The service authenticates the client by verifying that the ticket is valid.

After authenticating the client, the service determines if the client is authorized to use the service.

Kerberos only authenticates clients; it does not authorize them to use services. For example, many services use Mac OS X Server’s service access control lists (SACLs) to determine whether a client is authorized to use the service.

Kerberos never sends a password or password policy information to a service. After a ticket-granting ticket is obtained, no password information is provided.

Time is very important with Kerberos. If the client and the KDC are out of sync by more than a few minutes, the client will fail to achieve authentication with the KDC. The date, time, and time zone information must be correct on the KDC server and clients, and the server and clients should all use the same network time service to keep their clocks in sync.

For more information about Kerberos, go to the MIT Kerberos website at web.mit.edu/kerberos/www/index.html.

Open Directory Password Server and Shadow Password Authentication Methods

For compatibility with various services, Mac OS X Server can use several authentication methods to validate Open Directory passwords and shadow passwords.

For Open Directory passwords, Mac OS X Server uses the standard Simple Authentication and Security Layer (SASL) mechanism to negotiate an authentication method between a client and a service.

For shadow passwords, the use of SASL depends on the network protocol. The following authentication methods are supported:

Method	Network security	Storage security	Uses
APOP	Encrypted, with clear text fallback	Clear text	POP mail service
CRAM-MD5	Encrypted, with clear text fallback	Encrypted	IMAP mail service, LDAP service

Method	Network security	Storage security	Uses
DHX	Encrypted	Encrypted	AFP file service, Open Directory administration
Digest-MD5	Encrypted	Encrypted	Login window, mail service
MS-CHAPv2	Encrypted	Encrypted	VPN service
NTLMv1 and NTLMv2	Encrypted	Encrypted	SMB services (Windows NT/98 or later)
LAN Manager	Encrypted	Encrypted	SMB services (Windows 95)
WebDAV-Digest	Encrypted	Clear text	WebDAV file service (iDisk)

Open Directory supports many authentication methods because each service that requires authentication uses some methods but not others. For example, File service uses one set of authentication methods, Web service uses another set of methods, mail service uses another set, and so on.

Some authentication methods are more secure than others. The more secure methods use stronger algorithms to encode the information they transmit between client and server. The more secure authentication methods also store hashes, which can't easily be recovered from the server. Less secure methods store a recoverable, clear text password.

No one—including an administrator and the root user account—can recover encrypted passwords by reading them from the database. An administrator can use Workgroup Manager to set a user's password, but the administrator can't read a user's password.

If you connect Mac OS X Server v10.4 or later to a directory domain of Mac OS X Server v10.3 or earlier, users defined in the older directory domain cannot be authenticated with the NTLMv2 method. This method may be required to securely authenticate some Windows users for the Windows services of Mac OS X Server v10.4 or later.

Open Directory Password Server in Mac OS X Server v10.4 or later supports NTLMv2 authentication, but Password Server in Mac OS X Server v10.3 or earlier does not support NTLMv2.

If you connect Mac OS X Server v10.3 or later to a directory domain of Mac OS X Server v10.2 or earlier, users defined in the older directory domain cannot be authenticated with the MS-CHAPv2 method. This method may be required to securely authenticate users for the VPN service of Mac OS X Server v10.3 or later.

Open Directory Password Server in Mac OS X Server v10.3 or later supports MS-CHAPv2 authentication, but Password Server in Mac OS X Server v10.2 does not support MS-CHAPv2.

Disabling Open Directory Authentication Methods

To make Open Directory password storage on the server more secure, you can selectively disable authentication methods.

For example, if no clients are going to use Windows services, you can disable the NTLMv1, NTLMv2, and LAN Manager authentication methods to prevent storing passwords on the server using these methods. Then someone who gains unauthorized access to the server's password database can't exploit weaknesses in these authentication methods to crack passwords.

Important: If you disable an authentication method, its hash is removed from the password database the next time the user authenticates. If you enable an authentication method that was disabled, every Open Directory password must be reset to add the newly enabled method's hash to the password database. Users can reset their own passwords, or a directory administrator can do it.

Disabling an authentication method makes the Open Directory Password Server database more secure if an unauthorized user gains physical access to an Open Directory server (master or replica) or to media containing a backup of the Open Directory master.

Someone who gains access to the password database can try to crack a user's password by attacking the hash or recoverable text stored in the password database by any authentication method. Nothing is stored in the password database by a disabled authentication method, leaving one less avenue of attack open to a cracker who has physical access to the Open Directory server or a backup of it.

Some hashes stored in the password database are easier to crack than others. Recoverable authentication methods store clear (plainly readable) text. Disabling authentication methods that store clear text or weaker hashes increases password database security more than disabling methods that store stronger hashes.

If you believe your Open Directory master, replicas, and backups are secure, select all authentication methods. If you're concerned about the physical security of any Open Directory server or its backup media, disable some methods.

Note: Disabling authentication methods does not increase the security of passwords while they are transmitted over the network. Only the password database security is affected. In fact, disabling some authentication methods may require clients to configure their software to send passwords over the network in clear text, thereby compromising password security in a different way.

Disabling Shadow Password Authentication Methods

You can selectively disable authentication methods to make passwords stored in shadow password files more secure. For example, if a user doesn't use mail service or web services, you can disable the WebDAV-Digest and APOP methods for the user. Then someone who gains access to the shadow password files on a server can't recover the user's password.

Important: If you disable a shadow password authentication method, its hash is removed from a user's shadow password file the next time the user authenticates. If you enable an authentication method that was disabled, the newly enabled method's hash is added to the user's shadow password file the next time the user authenticates for a service that can use a clear text password, such as login window or AFP. Alternatively, you can reset the user's password to add the newly enabled method's hash. The user can reset the password, or a directory administrator can do it.

Disabling an authentication method makes the shadow password more secure if a malicious user gains physical access to a server's shadow password files or to media containing a backup of the shadow password files. Someone who gains access to the password files can try to crack a user's password by attacking the hash or recoverable text stored by any authentication method.

Nothing is stored by a disabled authentication method, leaving one less avenue of attack open to a cracker who has physical access to a server's shadow password files or a backup of them.

Hashes stored by some authentication methods are easier to crack than others. With recoverable authentication methods, original clear text password can be reconstructed from what is stored in the file. Disabling the authentication methods that store recoverable or weaker hashes increases shadow password file security more than disabling methods that store stronger hashes.

If you believe a server's shadow password files and backups are secure, select all authentication methods. If you're concerned about the physical security of the server or its backup media, disable unused methods.

Note: Disabling authentication methods does not increase the security of passwords while they are transmitted over the network; only the password storage security is affected. Disabling some authentication methods may require clients to configure their software to send passwords over the network in clear text, thereby compromising password security in a different way.

Contents of the Open Directory Password Server Database

Open Directory Password Server maintains an authentication database separate from the directory domain. Open Directory tightly restricts access to the authentication database.

Open Directory Password Server stores the following information in its authentication database for each user account that has a password type of Open Directory:

- The user's password ID, a 128-bit value assigned when the password is created. It is also stored in the user's record in the directory domain and is used as a key for finding a user's record in the Open Directory Password Server database.
- The password, stored in recoverable (clear text) or hashed (encrypted) forms. The form depends on the authentication method. A recoverable password is stored for the APOP and WebDAV authentication methods. For all other methods, the record stores a hashed (encrypted) password. If no authentication method requiring a clear text password is enabled, the Open Directory authentication database stores only hashes of passwords.
- The user's short name, for use in log messages viewable in Server Admin.
- Password policy data.
- Time stamps and other usage information, such as last login time, last failed validation time, count of failed validations, and replication information.

LDAP Bind Authentication

For user accounts that reside in an LDAP directory on a non-Apple server, Open Directory attempts to use LDAP bind authentication. Open Directory sends the LDAP directory server the name and password supplied by the authenticating user. If the LDAP server finds a matching user record and password, authentication succeeds.

If the LDAP directory service and the client computer's connection to it are configured to send clear text passwords over the network, LDAP bind authentication can be insecure.

Open Directory tries to use a secure authentication method with the LDAP directory. If the directory doesn't support secure LDAP bind and the client's LDAPv3 connection permits sending a clear text password, Open Directory reverts to simple LDAP bind.

To prevent clear text authentication make sure your LDAP servers don't accept clear text passwords.

In this case, you can secure simple LDAP bind authentication by setting up access to the LDAP directory through the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol. SSL makes access secure by encrypting all communications with the LDAP directory. For more information, see "Changing the Security Policy for an LDAP Connection" on page 145 and "Changing the Connection Settings for an LDAP Directory" on page 144.

This chapter presents guidelines for planning Open Directory services and describes tools for managing them. Like the plumbing and wiring in a building, directory services for a network must be planned in advance, not on an ad hoc basis.

Keeping information in shared directory domains gives you more control over your network, gives more users access to the information, and makes it easier to maintain the information. The amount of control and convenience depends on the effort you put into planning your shared domains.

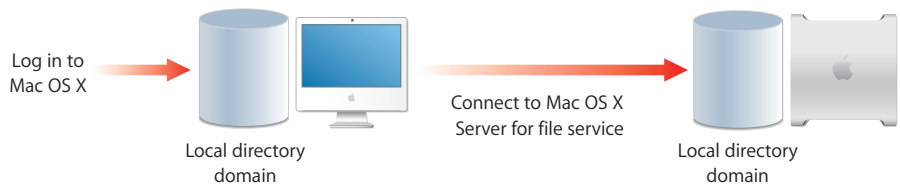
The goal of directory domain planning is to design the simplest arrangement of shared domains that gives your Mac OS X users easy access to the network resources they need *and* that minimizes the time you spend maintaining user records and other administrative data.

General Planning Guidelines

If you do not share user and resource information among multiple Mac OS X computers, very little directory domain planning is necessary, because everything can be accessed from a local directory domain.

However, make sure that all individuals who use a particular Mac OS X computer have user accounts on that computer. These user accounts reside in the local directory domain on the computer.

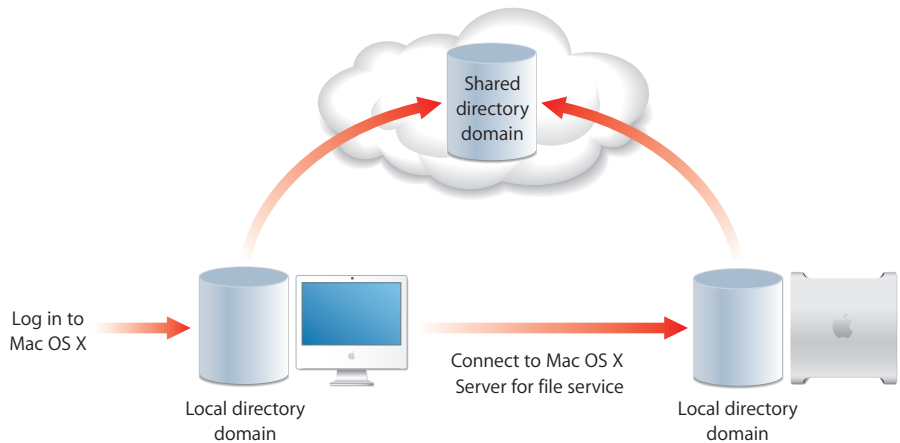
In addition, everyone who needs to use Mac OS X Server's file service, mail service, or other services that require authentication must have a user account in the server's local directory domain. With this arrangement, each user has two accounts, one for logging in to a computer and one for accessing services of Mac OS X Server, as illustrated in the following figure. The user logs in to the local directory domain of the Mac OS X computer then uses a different account to log in to the local directory domain of the file services server.



To share information among Mac OS X computers and servers, you must set up at least one shared directory domain. With this arrangement, each user needs an account only in the shared directory domain.

With this one account, the user can log in to Mac OS X on any computer that's configured to access the shared directory domain. The user can also use this same account to access services of any Mac OS X Server that's configured to access the shared directory domain.

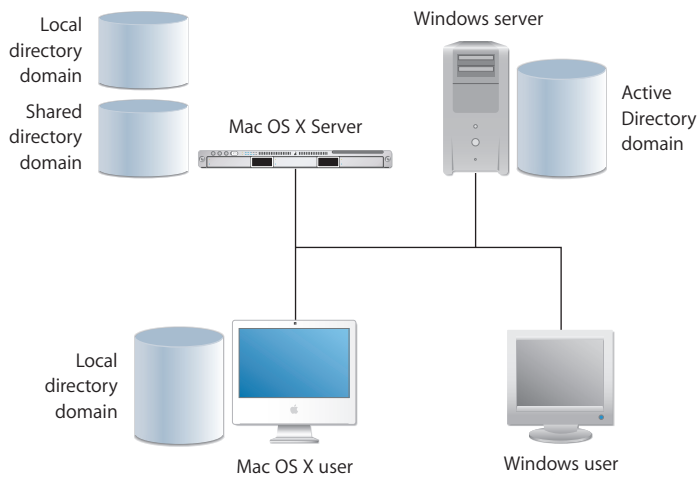
The following figure illustrates a configuration with a shared directory domain. The figure shows a user logging in to a Mac OS X computer using a shared directory domain account. Then the shared directory domain account is also used to access a file service. When the user attempts to access the file service, file services server accesses the shared directory domain to verify the user account. Because both the user computer and file services computer are connected to the shared directory domain, the user account on the shared directory domain is used to access both a computer and services without having to have a local account on each computer.



In many organizations, a single shared directory domain is adequate. It can handle hundreds of thousands of users and thousands of computers sharing the same resources, such as printer queues, share points for home directories, share points for applications, and share points for documents.

Replicating the shared directory domain can increase the capacity or performance of the directory system by configuring multiple servers to handle the directory system load for the network.

Larger, more complex organizations can benefit from extra shared directory domains. The following figure shows how one such complex organization might organize its directory domains.



If you have a large organization and you want to increase the performance and capacity of your network directory domain, you can add multiple directory domains to your network. Also, by using multiple directory domains you can load balance your corporate directory domain.

There are different methods of configuring multiple directory domains. By analyzing your network topology you can determine the best method for your network.

The following are optional configurations of multiple directory domains:

- *Open Directory with a preexisting domain.* You can configure a Mac OS X Open Directory server on a network that has a preexisting directory domain such as an Active Directory or Open Directory domain.

For example, if your organization has a preexisting Active Directory server that supports Windows and Mac OS X client computers you can add a Mac OS X Open Directory server to better support your Mac users. The two servers can exist on the same network and provide redundant directory domains for both Windows and Mac OS X clients. You also configure the Mac OS X Server to handle cross-domain authorization if a Kerberos realm exists.

If you set up your Mac OS X server with the workgroup configuration, you can easily add it to your preexisting directory domain. Using the workgroup configuration of Mac OS X you can easily import users from your preexisting directory domain into your workgroup server. These imported users are referred to as augmented users.

For more information about augmented users and workgroup or standard configuration of Mac OS X server, see *Getting Started* and *User Management*.

- *Open Directory Master Server with replicas.* You can also create a Mac OS X Open Directory master server with replicas. The replica servers have a copy of the Open Directory master's directory domain for load balancing and redundancy.
- For example, your organization could have an Open Directory master at your headquarters and place replicas of that server at each remote location. This prevents users at remote locations from experiencing delayed logins.
- *Cascading replication.* You can also use cascading replication, where replicas of an Open Directory master have replicas. If a replica is a direct member of the Open Directory master and it has replicas it is called a *relay*.

For example, If your organization has 32 replicas and you must add another replica, you can reorganize your network topology and have your replicas become relays by adding replicas to a replica (or relay).

Cascading replication load balances the Open Directory master by minimizing the number of replicas it must directly manage.

Estimating Directory and Authentication Requirements

In addition to considering how you want to distribute directory data among multiple domains, you must also consider the capacity of each directory domain. The size of your directory domain depends on your network requirements.

One factor is the performance of the database that stores directory information. The LDAP directory domain of Mac OS X Server uses the Berkeley DB database, which remains efficient with 200,000 records. A server hosting a directory domain of that size must have sufficient hard disk space to store all the records.

The number of connections a directory service can handle is harder to measure because directory service connections occur in the context of the connections of all services the server provides. With Mac OS X Server, a server dedicated to Open Directory has a limit of 1000 simultaneous client computer connections.

The Open Directory server can provide LDAP and authentication services to more client computers, because not all computers need these services at the same time. Each computer connects to the LDAP directory for up to two minutes, and connections to the Open Directory Password Server are even more brief.

Determining what the fraction is—what percentage of computers will make connections at the same time—can be difficult.

For example, computers that each have a single user who spends all day working on graphics files will need Open Directory services relatively infrequently.

In contrast, computers in a lab will have many users logging in throughout the day, each with a different set of managed client preference settings, and these computers will place a relatively high load on Open Directory services.

In general, you can correlate Open Directory usage with login and logout. These activities generally dominate directory and authentication services for any system.

The more frequently users log in and out, the fewer computers an Open Directory server (or any directory and authentication server) can support. You need more Open Directory servers if users log in frequently. You can get by with fewer Open Directory servers if work sessions are long and login is infrequent.

Identifying Servers for Hosting Shared Domains

If you need more than one shared domain, identify the servers where the shared domains should reside. Shared domains affect many users, so they should reside on Mac OS X Server computers that have the following characteristics:

- Restricted physical access
- Limited network access
- High-availability technologies, such as uninterruptible power supplies

Select computers that will not be replaced frequently and that have adequate capacity for expanding directory domains. Although you can move a shared domain after it is set up, it might be necessary to reconfigure the search policies of computers that connect to the shared domain so users can continue to log in.

Replicating Open Directory Services

Mac OS X Server supports replication of the LDAP directory service, the Open Directory Password Server, and the Kerberos KDC.

By replicating your directory and authentication services you can:

- Move directory information closer to a population of users in a geographically distributed network, improving performance of directory and authentication services to these users.
- Achieve redundancy, so users see little disruption in service if a directory system fails or becomes unreachable.

One server has a primary copy of the shared LDAP directory domain, Open Directory Password Server, and Kerberos KDC. This server is referred to as an Open Directory *master*. Each Open Directory replica is a separate server with a copy of the master's LDAP directory, Open Directory Password Server, and Kerberos KDC.

A Mac OS X Open Directory Server can have up to 32 replicas. Each replica can have 32 replicas of itself, providing you with 1056 replicas in a two-tier hierarchy.

Access to the LDAP directory on a replica is read only. Changes to user records and other account information in the LDAP directory can be made only on the Open Directory master.

The Open Directory master updates its replicas when there are changes to the LDAP directory. The master can update replicas every time a change occurs, or you can set up a schedule so updates occur at regular intervals. The fixed schedule option is best if replicas are connected to the master by a slow network link.

Passwords and password policies can be changed on any replica. If a user’s password or password policy are changed on more than one replica, the most recent change prevails.

The updating of replicas relies on the clocks of the master and replicas being in sync. If replicas and the master have different times, updating could be arbitrary. The date, time, and time zone information must be correct on the master and replicas, and they should use the same network time service to keep their clocks in sync.

Avoid having only one replica on either side of a slow network link. If a replica is separated from all other replicas by a slow network link and the one replica fails, clients of the replica will fail over to a replica on the other side of the slow network link. As a result, their directory services may slow markedly.

If your network has a mix of Mac OS X Server versions 10.4 and 10.5, one version can’t be a replica of a master of the other version. An Open Directory master of v10.5 won’t replicate to v10.4, nor will an Open Directory master of v10.4 replicate to v10.5:

Replica version	Mac OS X Server v10.5 master	Mac OS X Server v10.4 master
Mac OS X Server v10.5 replica	Yes	No
Mac OS X Server v10.4 replica	No	Yes

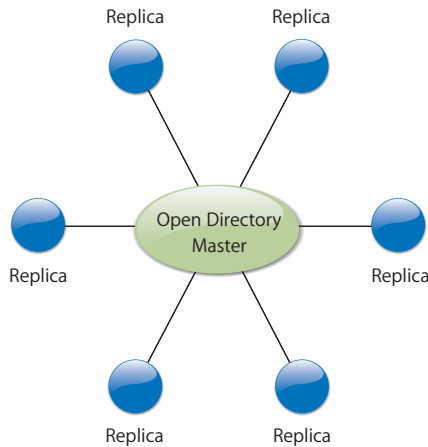
Replica Sets

A replica set is an automatic configuration that requires each service that Open Directory manages (LDAP, Password server, and Kerberos) to look for and use the same replica server. This helps ensure that client computers choose the same replica server when using Open Directory services and helps prevent slow login.

Cascading Replication

Mac OS X v10.4 used a hub-spoke model for replicating Open Directory master servers. This required each Open Directory master to maintain a transaction record for each replica server.

The following illustration shows the hub-spoke model used for replication in Mac OS X v10.4.



In addition, there was no predefined limit to how many replica servers an Open Directory master could manage.

If an Open Directory master had 1000 replicas to manage, it could have performance issues if replicas continued to be added. This is similar to having one manager for 1000 employees, which is an unmanageable situation.

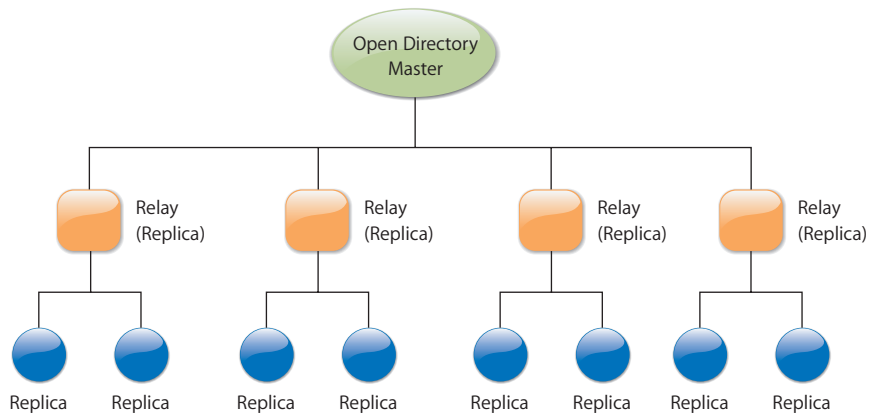
Mac OS X Server v10.5 uses cascading replication to improve scalability and resolve performance issues with the older hub-spoke model of replication. The use of cascading replication helps limit the number of replica servers that can be supported by a single Open Directory master server.

A single Open Directory master server can have up to 32 replicas and each of those replicas can have up to 32 replicas, which gives you 1056 replicas of a single Open Directory master server.

This creates a two-tier hierarchy of replica servers. The first tier of replicas, which are the direct members of the Open Directory master, are called relays if they have replicas, because they relay the data to the second tier of replicas.

Also, cascading replication does not require that a single Open Directory master server maintain a transaction record of each replica server. The master server only keeps a maximum of 32 replica transaction records, which improves performance.

The following illustration shows the two-tier hierarchy of the cascading replication model.



Planning the Upgrade of Multiple Open Directory Replicas

If your Open Directory master manages more than 32 replicas, your organization must migrate to a cascading replication. The cascading replication model will improve your Open Directory server performance.

When planning for your migration consider the locations of your replica servers and your network topology to help determine how to reorganize your replicas into a hierarchal structure.

For example, you would not want to have an Open Directory master on the West coast replicating out to a replica on the East coast.

Note: If your Open Directory master has fewer than 32 replicas, a migration is not necessary.

Load Balancing in Small, Medium, and Large Environments

Do not use service load-balancing software from third parties with Open Directory servers.

Load-balancing software can cause unpredictable problems for Open Directory computers. It can interfere with the automatic load balancing and failover behavior of Open Directory in Mac OS X and Mac OS X Server.

Mac OS X computers seek the nearest available Open Directory server—master or replica. A computer's nearest Open Directory master or replica is the one that responds most quickly to the computer's request for an Open Directory connection.

Replication in a Multibuilding Campus

A network that spans multiple buildings may have slower network links between buildings than the link within each building. The network links between buildings may also be overloaded.

These conditions can adversely affect the performance of computers that get Open Directory services from a server in another building. As a result, you may want to set up an Open Directory replica in each building.

Depending on need, you may even want to set up an Open Directory replica on each floor of a multistory building. Each replica provides efficient directory and authentication services to client computers in its vicinity. The computers do not need to make connections with an Open Directory server across the slow, crowded network link between buildings.

Having more replicas has a disadvantage. Replicas communicate with each other and with the master over the network. This network communication overhead increases as you add replicas. Adding too many replicas can add more network traffic between buildings in the form of replication updates than it removes in the form of Open Directory client communications.

When deciding how many replicas to deploy, consider how heavily the computers will use Open Directory services. If the computers are relatively light users of Open Directory services and your buildings are connected by fairly fast network links (such as 100 Mbit/s Ethernet), you probably do not need a replica in each building.

You can reduce the communication overhead between Open Directory replicas and the master by scheduling how often the Open Directory master updates the replicas. You might not need the replicas updated every time a change occurs in the master. Scheduling less frequent updates of replicas will improve network performance.

Using an Open Directory Master, Replica, or Relay with NAT

If your network has an Open Directory server on the private network side of a network address translation (NAT) router (or gateway), including the NAT router of Mac OS X Server, only computers on the private network side of the NAT router can connect to the Open Directory server's LDAP directory domain.

Computers on the public network side of the NAT router can't connect to the LDAP directory domain of an Open Directory master or replica that's on the private network side.

If an Open Directory server is on the public network side of a NAT router, computers on the private network and the public network sides of the NAT router can connect to the Open Directory server's LDAP directory.

If your network supports mobile clients such as MacBooks that will move between the private LAN of your NAT gateway and the Internet, you must set up VPN service for mobile users so they can use a VPN to connect to the private network and the Open Directory domain.

Open Directory Master and Replica Compatibility

The Open Directory master and its replicas must use the same version of Mac OS X Server. In addition:

- An Open Directory master using Mac OS X Server v10.5 won't replicate to Mac OS X Server v10.4.
- Mac OS X Server v10.5 can't be a replica of an Open Directory master using Mac OS X Server v10.4.
- An Open Directory master using Mac OS X Server v10.5 can replicate to an Open Directory replica using Mac OS X Server v10.5.

If you have an Open Directory master and replicas that use Mac OS X Server v10.4, upgrade them to v10.5 at the same time. First, upgrade the master; then, upgrade the replicas. Clients of the master and replicas will continue to receive directory and authentication services during the upgrade.

While you are upgrading the master, its clients will fail over to the nearest replica. When you upgrade replicas one at a time, clients will fail back to the upgraded master.

Upgrading an Open Directory master from Mac OS X Server v10.4 to v10.5 will sever ties to existing replicas. After upgrading each Open Directory replica to Mac OS X Server v10.5, it will be a standalone directory service and you'll need to make it a replica again.

For more information about upgrading to Mac OS X Server v10.5, see *Upgrading and Migrating*.

Mixing Active Directory and Open Directory Master and Replica Services

There are some special considerations when introducing Open Directory Servers into an Active Directory environment. If precautions are not taken, mixed results will occur on client experience and server functionality.

Also, avoid mixing Authenticated Directory Binding and Active Directory on the same client or server. Authenticated binding makes use of Kerberos as does Active Directory. Using both will cause unexpected behavior or nonfunctioning authentication services unless care is taken as detailed below.

When mixing Open Directory and Active Directory, you will only be able to use Kerberos credentials from one system or another for single sign-on purposes. You cannot have users exist in Active Directory and Open Directory and use both Kerberos credentials to Single Sign-on onto a server that is Kerberized for particular server. In other words, you cannot sign into Active Directory account and expect to use single sign-on with a server that is part of the Open Directory Kerberos realm.

Kerberos is used in both Active Directory and Open Directory environments. Kerberos makes certain assumptions about determining the realm of a particular server when Kerberos tickets are to be used. The following is an example of mixing an Active Directory kerberos realm with an Open Directory master kerberos realm:

- Active Directory Domain = company.com
- Active Directory Kerberos realm = COMPANY.COM
- Open Directory Server master = server1.company.com
- Open Directory Kerberos realm = SERVER1.COMPANY.COM

When kerberos attempts to obtain a TGS for using LDAP with server1.company.com, it will request "ldap/server1. company.com@COMPANY.COM" unless domain_realms is present in the configuration. The "domain_realms" for Open Directory assumes that all ".company.com" belongs to "SERVER1.DEMOTREE.COM". This would prevent all connectivity to the Active Directory domain named "company.com".

If you wish to mix Authenticated Directory Binding and Active Directory, then your Active Directory Domain and Open Directory realms and servers must be in a different hierarchy. For example:

- Active Directory Domain = company.com
- Active Directory Kerberos realm = COMPANY.COM
- Open Directory Server master = server1.od.company.com
- Open Directory Server realm = "OD.COMPANY.COM"

Or

- Active Directory Domain = ads.company.com
- Active Directory Kerberos realm = ADS.COMPANY.COM
- Open Directory Server master = server1.od.company.com
- Open Directory Kerberos realm = OD.COMPANY.COM

In both examples, a new DNS domain zone needs to be created and both forward and reverse DNS entries need to exist for the servers so that if an IP address is used for the Open Directory server, it will get the name expected. For example, IP address "server1.od.company.com" = 10.1.1.1, so lookup of 10.1.1.1 should be equal to "server1.od.company.com", not "server1.company.com".

Integrating with Existing Directory Domains

If your network already has a directory domain, you can add another directory domain server to your network that uses your existing directory domain's database to authorize users access. This configuration is referred to as cross-domain authorization and requires that your servers support Kerberos.

If you use cross-domain authorization, one server will be a pseudomaster server and the other will be a subordinate server. All users will authenticate to the pseudomaster server using a method of authentication, so if a user authenticates, he or she will receive a Kerberos ticket. When the user attempts to access a service that is offered by the subordinate server, the subordinate server accepts and validates the user's Kerberos ticket, which was given by the pseudomaster server, to authorize the user.

The Kerberos ticket has Privilege Attribute Certificate (PAC) information, which contains the user name, user IDs (UIDs), and group membership IDs (GIDs). The subordinate server uses this information to verify that the user is authorized to use the service, by comparing the UID or GID to the access control list (ACL) of the service the user is requesting to access.

Using cross-domain authorization keeps you from needing to create different user names and passwords for your subordinate directory domain server. You can use the same user names and passwords from the corporate directory domain along with the PAC information to authorize user access.

Cross-domain authorization is an ideal configuration if you are not permitted to directly edit groups in the corporate directory domain.

You can use cross-domain authorization between an Active Directory server and a Mac OS X v10.5 Open Directory server or between two Mac OS X v10.5 Open Directory servers. Cross-domain authorization does not work on a Mac OS X v10.4 server. To use PAC information, the pseudomaster server must have a Kerberos realm for the subordinate server to join.

To become a subordinate for a directory system you must use Directory Utility to join your server to an Active Directory or Open Directory server that has Kerberos configured and running. Then, using Server Admin, you must promote your Open Directory server to an Open Directory master. The subordinate server automatically determines that it is subordinate to an Active Directory or Open Directory server and configures itself accordingly.

You can also have a replica of your subordinate Open Directory server. To create a replica of a subordinate directory server, join your server to the pseudomaster and subordinate server using Directory Utility. Then configure the server to be a replica of the subordinate server.

If you don't join the server to both the pseudomaster and subordinate server, it will be blocked or fail to become a replica.

Integrating Without Schema Changes

Mac OS X and Mac OS X Server integrate with most LDAP-based directories without needing to change the schema of your directory server. However, some record types may not be recognized or maintained by your server's directory schema.

When you integrate Mac OS X computers with your directory server, you might want to add a new record type or object class to the directory schema to better manage and support your Mac OS X client computers.

For example, by default there may not be a Picture record type in your directory schema for your Mac OS X users, but you can add it to your directory schema so Picture records can be stored in the directory database.

If you want to add records or attributes to your directory schema, consult your directory domain administrator for instructions.

Integrating with Schema Changes

If you are adding Mac OS X computers to your existing directory domain, you can make schema changes to your directory domain server to better support Mac OS X client computers.

When you add a record type or attribute to your schema, investigate whether you already have a record type or attribute that can easily map to it in your existing directory schema. If you don't have a similar record type or attribute that you can map to, you can add the record type or attribute to your schema. This is referred to as *extending* your schema.

When you extend your schema you might need to change the default Access Control List (ACL) of specific attributes so computer accounts can read the user properties. For example, you can configure Mac OS X to access basic user account information in an Active Directory domain of a Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 or later server.

For more information about extending your schema, see the Appendix, "Mac OS X Directory Data."

Avoiding Kerberos Conflicts with Multiple Directories

If you set up an Open Directory master on a network that has an Active Directory domain, your network will have two Kerberos realms: An Open Directory Kerberos realm and an Active Directory Kerberos realm.

For all practical purposes, other servers on the network can use only one Kerberos realm. When you set up a file server, mail server, or other server that can use Kerberos authentication, you must choose one Kerberos realm.

Mac OS X Server must belong to the same Kerberos realm as its client users. The realm has only one authoritative Kerberos server, which is responsible for all Kerberos authentication in the realm. The Kerberos server can only authenticate clients and servers in its realm. The Kerberos server can't authenticate clients or services that are part of a different realm.

Only user accounts in the chosen Kerberos realm will have single sign-on abilities. User accounts in the other realm can still authenticate, but they won't have single sign-on.

If you're configuring a server to access multiple directory systems each with a Kerberos realm, plan carefully for the user accounts that will use Kerberized services. You must know the intent of having access to two directory services. You must join the server to the realm whose companion directory domain contains the user accounts that must use Kerberos and single sign-on.

For example, you might want to configure access to an Active Directory realm for its user records and an Open Directory LDAP directory for the Mac OS X records and attributes that aren't in Active Directory, such as group and computer records. Other servers could join the Active Directory Kerberos realm or the Open Directory Kerberos realm.

In this case, the other servers should join the Active Directory Kerberos realm so the Active Directory user accounts have single sign-on.

If you also have user accounts in the Open Directory server's LDAP directory, users can still authenticate to them, but the Open Directory user accounts won't use Kerberos or have single sign-on. They'll use Open Directory Password Server authentication methods.

You could put all Mac users in the Open Directory domain and all Windows users in the Active Directory domain, and they could all authenticate, but only one of the populations could use Kerberos.

Important: Do not configure an Open Directory master or replica to also access an Active Directory domain (or any other directory domain with a Kerberos realm). If you do, the Open Directory Kerberos realm and the Active Directory Kerberos realm will try to use the same configuration files on the Open Directory server, which will disrupt Open Directory Kerberos authentication.

To avoid a Kerberos configuration file conflict, don't use an Open Directory server as a workstation for managing users in another Kerberos server's directory domain, such as an Active Directory domain. Instead, use an administrator computer (a Mac OS X computer with server administration tools installed) that's configured to access the related directory domains.

If you must use an Open Directory server to manage users in another server's directory domain, make sure the other directory domain is not part of the Open Directory server's authentication search policy.

To further avoid a Kerberos configuration file conflict, don't use an Open Directory server to provide services that access a different Kerberos server's directory domain.

For example, if you configure AFP file service to access both Open Directory and Active Directory, don't use an Open Directory server to provide the file service. Use another server and join it to the Kerberos realm of one directory service or the other.

Theoretically, servers or clients can belong to two Kerberos realms, such as an Open Directory realm and an Active Directory realm. Multiple-realm Kerberos authentication requires very advanced configuration, which includes setting up the Kerberos servers and clients for cross-realm authentication, and revising Kerberized service software so it can belong to multiple realms.

Improving Performance and Redundancy

You can improve the performance of Open Directory services by adding memory to the server and having it provide fewer services. This strategy also applies to every other service of Mac OS X Server. The more you can dedicate an individual server to a particular task, the better its performance will be.

Beyond that general strategy, you can also improve Open Directory server performance by assigning the LDAP database to its own disk and the Open Directory logs to another disk.

If your network includes replicas of an Open Directory master, you can improve network performance by scheduling less-frequent updates of replicas. Updating less frequently means the replicas have less up-to-date directory data, so you must strike a balance between higher network performance and less accuracy in your replicas.

For greater redundancy of Open Directory services, set up extra servers as Open Directory replicas or use servers with RAID sets.

Open Directory Security

With Mac OS X Server, a server with a shared LDAP directory domain also provides Open Directory authentication. It is important to protect the authentication data stored by Open Directory. This authentication data includes the Open Directory Password Server database and the Kerberos database, which must also be protected. Therefore, make sure an Open Directory master and all Open Directory replicas are secure by following these guidelines:

- Physical security of a server that is an Open Directory master or replica is paramount. Keep it behind a locked door, and always log it out.
- Secure the media you use to back up an Open Directory Password Server database and a Kerberos database. Having your Open Directory servers behind locked doors won't protect a backup tape that you leave on your desk.
- Do not use a server that is an Open Directory master or replica to provide other services. If you can't dedicate servers to be Open Directory master and replicas, minimize the number of services they provide.

One of the other services could have a security breach that gives someone access to the Kerberos or Open Directory Password Server databases. Dedicating servers to provide Open Directory services is an optimal practice but is not required.

- Set up service access control lists (SACLs) for the login window and secure shell (SSH) to limit who can log in to an Open Directory master or replica.
- Avoid using a RAID volume that's shared with other computers as the startup volume of a server that is an Open Directory master or replica. A security breach on one of the other computers could jeopardize the security of the Open Directory authentication information.
- Set up IP firewall service to block all ports except those used for the following directory, authentication, and administration protocols:
 - Open Directory Password Server uses ports 106 and 3659.
 - The Kerberos KDC uses TCP/UDP port 88, and TCP/UDP port 749 is used for Kerberos administration.
 - The shared LDAP directory uses TCP port 389 for an ordinary connection and TCP port 636 for an SSL connection.
 - When creating an Open Directory replica, keep port 22 open between the master and prospective replica. This port is used for secure shell (SSH) data transfer, which is used to transfer a complete, up-to-date copy of the LDAP database. After initial replica setup, only the LDAP port (389 or 636) is used for replication.
 - Workgroup Manager uses TCP port 311 and 625.
 - Server Admin uses TCP port 311.
 - SMB uses TCP/UDP ports 137, 138, 139, and 445.
- Equip the Open Directory master computer with an uninterruptible power supply.

In summary, the most secure and best practice is to:

- Dedicate each server that is an Open Directory master or replica to provide only Open Directory services.
- Set up a firewall on these servers to provide only the following: directory access, authentication, and administration protocols (LDAP, Password Server, Kerberos, Workgroup Manager, and Server Manager.)
- Physically secure each Open Directory server and all backup media used with it.

Replicating directory and authentication data over the network is a minimal security risk. Password data is securely replicated using random keys negotiated during each replication session. The authentication portion of replication traffic—the Open Directory Password Server and the Kerberos KDC—is fully encrypted.

For extra security, configure network connections between Open Directory servers to use network switches rather than hubs. This isolates authentication replication traffic to trusted network segments.

Service Access Control Lists (SACLs)

Mac OS X uses SACLs to authorize user access to a service. SACLs are made up of access control entries (ACEs) that are used to determine the access privileges a user has to a service.

You can use SACLs to allow or deny user access to an Open Directory master or replica by setting SACLs for the login window and SSH. This restricts access to the service.

You can also use SACLs to set administrator access to Open Directory. This does not restrict access to the service; instead, it specifies who can administer or monitor the service. For more information about setting administrator SACLs, see “Configuring Service Access Control” on page 175.

SACLs provide you with greater control over specifying the administrators that have access to monitor and manage the service. Only users and groups listed in an SACL have access to its corresponding service. For example, if you want to give administrator access to users or groups for the Open Directory service on your server, add them to the Open Directory SACL as an ACE.

Tiered Administration

Mac OS X Server does not use organizational units (OUs) for user or group privileges in directory services. Privileges are independent of how you organize your directory database. Mac OS X Server v10.5 uses tiered administration for greater granularity of user read/write privileges for records in the directory database.

User privileges are controlled by organizing users or groups into an ACL and granting users read/write privileges to records. The entries of users or groups in ACLs are referred to as ACEs. By using tiered administration you can easily organize your users within groups and specify the records a group can administer.

If you use tiered administration, consider the following:

- Who is going to be in the group
- The privileges you want to give each group
- The records you want your group to administer

You can give users or groups full or limited control over domain administration. When giving limited administrative control, you can choose which users and groups a user or group can administer. You can also specify the control the user has over those users and groups. For example, granting a user full control gives that user unrestricted control of the directory domain.

You can only change a user's domain privileges for LDAPv3 directory domains. You can't change privileges for a local directory domain account or for an account stored in a non-LDAPv3 directory domain.

Full and limited administrators use Workgroup Manager to administrate and manage users. For more information, see *User Management*.

Tools for Managing Open Directory Services

The Server Admin, Directory Utility, and Workgroup Manager applications provide a graphical interface for managing Open Directory services in Mac OS X Server. In addition, you can manage Open Directory services from the command line by using Terminal.

All these applications are included with Mac OS X Server and can be installed on another computer with Mac OS X v10.5 or later, making that computer an administrator computer. For more information about setting up an administrator computer, see the Server Administration chapter of *Getting Started*.

Server Admin

The Server Admin application provides access to tools you use to set up, manage, and monitor Open Directory services and other services. You use Server Admin to:

- Set up Mac OS X Server as an Open Directory master, an Open Directory replica, a server that's connected to a directory system, or a standalone directory service with only a local directory domain. For more information, see Chapter 5, "Setting Up Open Directory Services."
- Set up more Mac OS X Server systems to use the Kerberos KDC of an Open Directory master or replica. For more information, see Chapter 5.
- Configure LDAP options on an Open Directory master. For more information, see Chapter 5.
- Configure DHCP service to supply an LDAP server address to Mac OS X computers with automatic search policies. For more information, see the DHCP chapter of *Network Services Administration*.
- Set up password policies that apply to all users who don't have overriding individual password policies. For more information, see Chapter 6, "Managing User Authentication." (To set up individual password policies, use Workgroup Manager; see Chapter 6.)
- Monitor Open Directory services. For more information, see Chapter 9, "Maintaining Open Directory Services."

For basic information about using Server Admin, see the Server Administration chapter in *Getting Started*. This chapter explains the following:

- Opening and authenticating in Server Admin
- Working with servers
- Administering services
- Controlling access to services
- Using SSL for remote server administration
- Customizing the Server Admin environment

Server Admin is in /Applications/Server/.

Directory Utility

Directory Utility determines how a Mac OS X computer uses directory services, discovers network services, and searches directory services for authentication and contacts information. You use Directory Utility to:

- Configure access to LDAP directories, an Active Directory domain, and Network Information Services (NIS) domain
- Configure data mapping for LDAP directories
- Define policies for searching multiple directory services for authentication and contact information
- Enable or disable types of directory services and types of network service discovery

Directory Utility can connect to other servers on your network so you can configure them remotely.

For more information about using Directory Utility, see Chapter 7, “Managing Directory Clients.”

Directory Utility is installed on every Mac OS X computer in `/Applications/Utilities/`.

Workgroup Manager

The Workgroup Manager application provides comprehensive management of Mac OS X Server clients. You use Workgroup Manager to:

- Set up and manage user accounts, group accounts, and computer groups. For more information about managing user authentication, see Chapter 6, “Managing User Authentication.” For more information about other user, group, and computer management topics, see *User Management*.
- Manage share points for file services and user home folders. For more information, see the chapters on share points and SMB services in *File Services Administration* and the chapter on home folders in *User Management*.
- Control what Mac OS X users see when they select the Network globe in a Finder sidebar. For more information, see the chapter on managing network views in *User Management*.
- View directory entries in raw form by using the Inspector. For more information, see “Viewing and Editing Directory Data” on page 179.

For basic information about using Workgroup Manager, see the chapter on server administration in *Getting Started*. This chapter explains the following:

- Opening and authenticating in Workgroup Manager
- Administering accounts
- Customizing the Workgroup Manager environment

Workgroup Manager is installed in `/Applications/Server/`.

Command-Line Tools

A full range of command-line tools is available for administrators who prefer to use command-driven server administration.

For remote server management, submit commands in a secure shell (SSH) session.

You can enter commands on Mac OS X servers and computers using the Terminal application, located in /Applications/Utilities/. For more information, see *Command-Line Administration*.

Open Directory services—directory services and authentication services—are an essential part of a network’s infrastructure. These services have a significant effect on other network services and on users. Therefore you must set up Open Directory correctly from the beginning.

Setup Overview

Here is a summary of the major tasks you perform to set up Open Directory services. For detailed information about each step, see the pages indicated.

Step 1: Before you begin, do some planning

For a list of items to think about before you configure Open Directory on Mac OS X Server, see “Before You Begin” on page 80.

Step 2: Turn on Open Directory service

Use Server Admin to turn the Open Directory service on. After the service is turned on you can configure Open Directory service settings. For more information about turning on Open Directory service, see “Turning Open Directory On” on page 81.

Step 3: Set up a standalone directory service

To set up servers that won’t get authentication and other administrative information from a directory service, see “Setting Up a Standalone Directory Service” on page 81.

Step 4: Set up an Open Directory master

To set up a server to provide directory and authentication services, see “Open Directory Master and Replica Compatibility” on page 67 and “Setting Up an Open Directory Master” on page 83.

Step 5: Set up a Primary Domain Controller

To set up a server to provide directory and authentication services for Windows and Mac OS X platforms, see “Setting Up a Primary Domain Controller” on page 85.

Step 6: Set up an Open Directory replica

To set up servers to provide failover directory and authentication services or remote directory and authentication services for fast client interaction on distributed networks, see “Setting Up an Open Directory Replica” on page 88.

Step 7: Set up Open Directory Relays for Cascading Replication

To set up a server to be a replica or relay of an Open Directory master so it can provide directory information and authentication information to computers, see “Setting Up Open Directory Relays for Cascading Replication” on page 91.

Step 8: Set up a Server as a Backup Domain Controller

To set up servers to provide failover support for your Primary Domain Controller, see “Setting Up a Server as a BDC” on page 91.

Step 9: Set up servers that connect to other directory systems

If you have file servers or other servers that access directory and authentication services, see “Setting Up a Connection to a Directory Server” on page 93.

Step 10: Set up single sign-on Kerberos authentication

If you have an Open Directory master, you can configure other servers to join its Kerberos realm. If you set up an Open Directory master without Kerberos, you can set up Kerberos later. For more information, see “Setting Up Single Sign-On Kerberos Authentication” on page 97.

Step 11: Set up client computers to connect to directory services

If you have an Open Directory master, you must configure client computers to access its directory domain. You can also configure computers to access other directory services such as Microsoft Active Directory. See Chapter 7, “Managing Directory Clients.” and Chapter 8, “Advanced Directory Client Settings.”

Step 12: Instruct users how to log in

See “Instructing Users How to Log In” on page 85.

Before You Begin

Before setting up Open Directory services for the first time:

- Understand the uses of directory data and assess your directory needs.

Identify the services that require data from directory domains and determine which users need access to those services.

Users whose information can be managed most easily on a server should be defined in the shared LDAP directory of a Mac OS X Server that is an Open Directory master. Some of these users can be defined in directory domains on other servers, such as an Active Directory domain on a Windows server.

These concepts are discussed in Chapter 1, “Directory Services with Open Directory.”

- Assess whether you need more than one shared domain. If so, decide which users will be defined in each shared domain. For more information, see “Multilevel Search Policies” on page 35.
- Determine which authentication options users need. For available options, see Chapter 3, “Open Directory Authentication.” Decide whether to have replicas of your Open Directory master or to have a BDC of your PDC. Chapter 4, “Open Directory Planning and Management Tools,” provides guidelines.
- Select server administrators carefully. Provide administrator passwords only to people you trust. Have as few administrators as possible. Don’t delegate administrator access for minor tasks, such as changing settings in a user record.

Directory information vitally affects everyone whose computers use it.

Managing Open Directory on a Remote Server

You can install Server Admin on a computer with Mac OS X v10.4 or later and use it to manage Open Directory on any server on your local network and beyond. You can also manage Open Directory remotely by using command-line tools from a Mac OS X computer or a non-Macintosh computer.

For more information, see the Server Administration chapter of *Getting Started*.

Turning Open Directory On

Before you can configure Open Directory settings, you must turn on Open Directory service in Server Admin.

To turn Open Directory service on:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the server.
- 2 Click Settings.
- 3 Click Services.
- 4 Select the Open Directory checkbox.
- 5 Click Save.

Setting Up a Standalone Directory Service

Using Server Admin, you can set up Mac OS X Server to use only the server’s local directory domain. The server does not provide directory information to other computers or get directory information from an existing system. (The local directory domain cannot be shared.)

If you change Mac OS X Server to get directory information only from its local directory domain, user records and other information that the server retrieved from a shared directory domain becomes unavailable. The user records and other information in the shared directory domain are deleted.

Files and folders on the server may become unavailable to users whose accounts are in the shared directory domain.

If the server was an Open Directory master and other servers were connected to it, the following can occur:

- Services can be disrupted on the connected servers when the user accounts and other information in the shared directory domain become unavailable.
- Users whose accounts are in the shared directory domain may not be able to access files and folders on the Open Directory master and on other servers that were connected to its shared LDAP directory domain.

You can archive a copy of the Open Directory master's directory and authentication data before changing it to an Open Directory standalone directory service. For more information, see "Archiving an Open Directory Master" on page 194.

You can also export users, groups, and computer groups from the Open Directory master before changing it to a standalone directory service. For more information, see *User Management*.

To configure a server to use only its own nonshared local directory domain:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the server.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 4 Click Settings, then click General.
- 5 Click Change.
The Service Configuration Assistant opens.
- 6 Choose Standalone, then click Continue.
- 7 Confirm the Open Directory configuration setting, then click Continue.
- 8 If you are sure that users and services no longer need access to the directory data stored in the shared directory domain that the server has been hosting or is connected to, click Close.

Setting Up an Open Directory Master

Using Server Admin, you can set up Mac OS X Server to be an Open Directory master so it can provide directory information and authentication information to other systems.

Mac OS X Server provides directory information by hosting a shared LDAP directory domain. In addition, the server authenticates users whose accounts are stored in the shared LDAP directory domain.

An Open Directory master has an Open Directory password server, which supports all conventional authentication methods required by Mac OS X Server services. In addition, an Open Directory master can provide Kerberos authentication for single sign-on.

If you want the Open Directory master to provide Kerberos authentication for single sign-on, DNS must be available on the network and must be correctly configured to resolve the fully qualified DNS name of the Open Directory master server to its IP address. DNS must also be configured to resolve the IP address to the server's fully qualified DNS name.

Important: If you're changing an Open Directory replica to an Open Directory master, the procedure you follow depends on whether the replica will replace the master or become an extra master:

- To promote a replica to replace a nonfunctional master, follow the instructions in "Promoting an Open Directory Replica" on page 190 instead of the instructions here.
- To change a replica to an extra master, first decommission the replica as described in "Decommissioning an Open Directory Replica" on page 193, then make it a master by following the steps in this topic.

Note: If Mac OS X Server was connected to a directory system and you make the server an Open Directory master, it remains connected to the other directory system. The server will search for user records and other information in its shared LDAP directory domain before searching in other directory systems it is connected to.

To configure a server to be an Open Directory master:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the server.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 4 Click Settings, then click General.

If the Role option is set to Open Directory Replica and you want to make a new Open Directory master, you must change the server role to Standalone. For more information, see "Setting Up a Standalone Directory Service" on page 81.

If you don't change an Open Directory replica to a standalone server before making it a master, you promote the replica to be a master instead of making a new master. For more information, see "Promoting an Open Directory Replica" on page 190.

5 Click Change.

This opens the Service Configuration Assistant.

6 Select Open Directory Master, then click Continue.

7 Enter the following Master Domain Administrator information, then click Continue.

- *Name, Short Name, User ID, Password:* You must create a user account for the primary administrator of the LDAP directory. This account is not a copy of the administrator account in the server's local directory domain. Make the names and user ID of the LDAP directory administrator different from the names and user IDs of user accounts in the local directory domain. Also, if you want to prevent the directory administrator account from being listed in the login window, you should assign the directory administrator account a user ID below 100. Accounts with user IDs below 100 are not listed in the login window.

Note: If you plan to connect your Open Directory Master to other directory domains, pick a unique name and user ID for each domain. Don't use the suggested *diradmin* user ID. Use a name that helps you distinguish the directory domain that the directory administrator controls.

8 Enter the following Master Domain information, then click Continue:

- *Kerberos Realm:* This field is preset to be the same as the server's DNS name, converted to capital letters. This is the convention for naming a Kerberos realm. You can enter a different name if necessary.
- *Search Base:* This field is preset to a search base suffix for the new LDAP directory, derived from the domain portion of the server's DNS name. You can enter a different search base suffix or leave it blank. If you leave this field blank, the LDAP directory's default search base suffix is used.

9 Confirm settings, then click Close.

10 Confirm that the Open Directory master is functioning properly by clicking Overview (near the top of the Server Admin window, with Open Directory selected in the Servers list).

The status of all items listed in the Open Directory overview pane should say "Running." If Kerberos remains stopped and you want it running, see "If Kerberos Is Stopped on an Open Directory Master or Replica" on page 199.

After setting up a Mac OS X Server computer to be an Open Directory master, you can change its binding policy, security policy, password policy, replication frequency, and LDAP protocol options. For more information, see "Setting Options for an Open Directory Server" on page 183.

You can configure other computers with Mac OS X or Mac OS X Server to access the server's shared LDAP directory domain. For more information, see "Using Advanced LDAP Service Settings" on page 133.

Instructing Users How to Log In

When a Mac OS X computer is connected to a directory domain and is configured to display a list of users in the Mac OS X login window, the list may include "Other." Tell users who have never logged in with a network account that they must click Other and then enter the account name and password.

Users can configure their computers to not display a list of users in the login window. Users change this setting in the Accounts pane of System Preferences by clicking Login Options.

You can have a computer's login window show network users in its list, or you can prevent the list from appearing by managing computer preferences. Use Workgroup Manager to configure login preference settings for the computer group account that includes the computer. To manage computers that are not part of a particular computer group account, configure login preference settings for the Guest Computers account.

For more information, see *User Management*.

Setting Up a Primary Domain Controller

Using Server Admin, you can set up Mac OS X Server as a Windows primary domain controller (PDC). The PDC hosts a Windows domain and provides authentication services to other domain members, including authentication for domain login on Windows workstations.

If no domain member server is available, the PDC server can provide Windows file and print services, and it can host user profiles and home folders for users who have user accounts on the PDC.

Important: When setting up Mac OS X Server as a PDC, make sure your network doesn't have another PDC with the same domain name. To set up more domain controllers, make them backup domain controllers (BDCs).

To set up a Windows PDC:

- 1 Make sure the server is an Open Directory master.

To determine whether a server is an Open Directory master, open Server Admin, click the triangle (to the left of the server), select Open Directory in the expanded list of services, then click Overview.

The first line of status information states the role of the Open Directory server.

- 2 Open Server Admin and connect to the server.
- 3 Click Settings, then click Services
- 4 Select the SMB checkbox, then click Save.
- 5 Click the triangle to left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 6 From the Servers list, select SMB.
- 7 Click Settings, then click General.
- 8 From the Role pop-up menu, choose Primary Domain Controller (PDC), then enter the following:
 - *Description*: This description appears in the Network Places window on Windows computers and is optional.
 - *Computer Name*: Enter the name you want Windows users to see when they connect to the server. This is the server's NetBIOS name. The name should contain no more than 15 characters, no special characters, and no punctuation. If practical, make the server name match its unqualified DNS host name. For example, if your DNS server has an entry for your server as "server.example.com," give your server the name "server."
 - *Domain*: Enter the name of the Windows domain that the server will host. The domain name cannot exceed 15 characters and cannot be "workgroup."
- 9 Click Save.
- 10 Enter the name and password of an LDAP directory administrator account, then click OK.

When authenticating, you must use an LDAP directory administrator account. You can't use a local administrator account, such as the primary server administrator account (user ID 501), to create a PDC.

After setting up a PDC, you can change access restrictions, logging detail level, code page, domain browsing, or WINS registration. Then if Windows services aren't running, you can start them. For more information, see *Network Services Administration*.

Setting Up Windows Vista for Domain Login

You can enable domain login on a Windows Vista computer by joining it to the Windows domain of a Mac OS X Server PDC. Joining the Windows domain requires the name and password of an LDAP directory administrator account.

You can delegate this task to someone with a local administrator account on the Windows computer. In this case, you may want to create a temporary LDAP directory administrator account with limited privileges. For more information, see *User Management*.

Note: Only Windows Vista Ultimate and Business edition can be connected to a domain.

To join a Windows Vista computer to a Windows domain:

- 1 Log in to Windows Vista using a local administrator account.
- 2 Open the Control Panel, then open System.
- 3 Click Change Settings.
- 4 Click Computer Name, then click Change.
- 5 Enter a computer name, click Domain, enter the domain name of the Mac OS X Server PDC, and click OK.

To look up the domain name of the server, open Server Admin on the server or an administrator computer, select SMB in the Servers list, click Settings, then click General.

- 6 Enter the name and password of an LDAP directory administrator and click OK.

Setting Up Windows XP for Domain Login

You can enable domain login on a Windows XP computer by joining it to the Windows domain of a Mac OS X Server PDC. Joining the Windows domain requires the name and password of an LDAP directory administrator account.

You can delegate this task to someone with a local administrator account on the Windows computer. In this case, you may want to create a temporary LDAP directory administrator account with limited privileges. For more information, see *User Management*.

To join a Windows XP computer to a Windows domain:

- 1 Log in to Windows XP using a local administrator account.
- 2 Open the Control Panel, then open System.
- 3 Click Computer Name, then click Change.
- 4 Enter a computer name, click Domain, enter the domain name of the Mac OS X Server PDC, and click OK.

To look up the domain name of the server, open Server Admin on the server or an administrator computer, select SMB in the Servers list, click Settings, then click General.

- 5 Enter the name and password of an LDAP directory administrator and click OK.

Setting Up Windows 2000 for Domain Login

You can enable domain login on a Windows 2000 computer by joining it to the Windows domain of a Mac OS X Server PDC. Joining the Windows domain requires the name and password of an LDAP directory administrator account.

You can delegate this task to someone with a local administrator account on the Windows computer. In this case, you may want to create a temporary LDAP directory administrator account with limited privileges. For more information, see *User Management*.

To join a Windows 2000 computer to a Windows domain:

- 1 Log in to Windows 2000 using a local administrator account.
- 2 Open the Control Panel, then open System.
- 3 Click Network Identification, then click Properties.
- 4 Enter a computer name, click Domain, enter the domain name of the Mac OS X Server PDC, and click OK.

To look up the domain name of the server, open Server Admin on the server or an administrator computer, select SMB in the Servers list, click Settings, then click General.

- 5 Enter the name and password of an LDAP directory administrator and click OK.

Setting Up an Open Directory Replica

Using Server Admin, you can set up Mac OS X Server to be a replica of an Open Directory master so it can provide the same directory information and authentication information to other systems as the master.

The replica server hosts a read-only copy of the master's LDAP directory domain. The replica server also hosts a read/write copy of the Open Directory Password Server and the Kerberos Key Distribution Center (KDC).

Open Directory replicas provide these benefits:

- In a wide area network (WAN) of local area networks (LANs) interconnected by slow links, replicas on the LANs provide servers and client computers with fast access to user accounts and other directory information.
- A replica provides redundancy. If the Open Directory master fails, computers connected to it switch to a nearby replica. This automatic failover behavior is a feature of Mac OS X and Mac OS X Server v10.4 and 10.5.

Note: If your network has a mix of Mac OS X Server versions 10.4 and 10.5, one version can't be a replica of a master of the other version. An Open Directory master of v10.5 won't replicate to Mac OS X Server v10.4, nor will an Open Directory master of Mac OS X Server v10.4 replicate to Mac OS X Server v10.5.

When you set up an Open Directory replica, all directory and authentication data must be copied to it from the Open Directory master. Replication can take several seconds or several minutes, depending on the size of the directory domain. Replication over a slow network link can take a long time.

During replication, the master cannot provide directory or authentication services. You can't use user accounts in the master LDAP directory to log in or authenticate for services until replication is finished.

To minimize the disruption of directory service, set up a replica before the master LDAP directory is fully populated or at a time of day when the directory service is not needed. Having another replica set up will insulate clients of directory service from problems if the master becomes unavailable.

If you change a Mac OS X Server computer that was connected to another directory system to be an Open Directory replica, the server remains connected to the other directory system. The server searches for user records and other information in its shared LDAP directory domain before searching in other directory systems it is connected to.

To configure a server to host a replica of an Open Directory master:

- 1 Make sure the master, the prospective replica, and every firewall between them is configured to permit SSH communications (port 22).

You can enable SSH for Mac OS X Server in Server Admin. Select the server in the Servers list, click Settings, click General, then select the Remote Login (SSH) option.

Make sure that SSH access is not restricted to certain users or groups (using SACLs) on the prospective master. This will cause Server Admin to not have the necessary permissions during creation of the replica. You can temporarily disable SACLs in Server Admin under Settings > Access.

For more information about SSH, see *Getting Started*. For more information about permitting SSH communications through the Mac OS X Server firewall, see *Network Services Administration*.

- 2 Open Server Admin and connect to the server.
- 3 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 4 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 5 Click Settings, then click General.
- 6 Click Change.

The Service Configuration Assistant opens.

- 7 Choose Open Directory Replica, then click Continue.
- 8 Enter the following requested information:
 - *IP address or DNS name of Open Directory master:* Enter the IP address or DNS name of the server that is the Open Directory master.
 - *Root password on Open Directory master:* Enter the password of the Open Directory master system's root user (user name system administrator).

- *Domain administrator's short name:* Enter the name of an LDAP directory domain administrator account.
- *Domain administrator's password:* Enter the password of the administrator account whose name you entered.

9 Click Continue.

10 Confirm the Open Directory configuration settings, then click Continue.

11 Click Close.

12 Make sure the date, time, and time zone are correct on the replica and the master.

The replica and the master should use the same network time service so their clocks remain in sync.

After you set up an Open Directory replica, other computers will connect to it as needed.

Computers with v10.3 or v10.4 of Mac OS X or Mac OS X Server maintain a list of Open Directory replicas. If one of these computers can't contact the Open Directory master for directory and authentication services, the computer connects to the nearest replica of the master.

You can configure Mac OS X computers to connect to an Open Directory replica instead of the Open Directory master for directory and authentication services. On each Mac OS X computer, you can use Directory Utility to create an LDAPv3 configuration for accessing the replica's LDAP directory.

You can also configure a DHCP service to supply the replica's LDAP directory to Mac OS X computers that get the address of an LDAP server from the DHCP service. See "Using Advanced LDAP Service Settings" on page 133 and "Defining Automatic Search Policies" on page 129.

The Open Directory master updates the replica. You can configure the master to update its replicas at a specific interval or whenever the master directory changes. For more information, see "Scheduling Replication of an Open Directory Master or Primary Domain Controller (PDC)" on page 189.

Creating Multiple Replicas of an Open Directory Master

To make more than one server a replica of an Open Directory master, create the replicas one at a time. If you try to create two replicas simultaneously, one attempt will succeed and the other will fail. A subsequent attempt to establish the second replica should succeed.

You can have up to 32 replicas of an Open Directory master. These direct members of the Open Directory master server are known as relays. Each relay can have up to 32 replicas of itself, giving you 1056 replicas in a two-tier hierarchy.

Setting Up Open Directory Relays for Cascading Replication

Using Server Admin, you can set up Mac OS X Server to be a replica or relay of an Open Directory master so it can provide the same directory information and authentication information to other computers as the master.

A relay has the following two conditions:

- It is a replica of an Open Directory master (a direct member).
- It has replicas (supports up to 32 replicas).

The process of configuring a replica of a relay is the same as configuring a replica of an Open Directory master. For more information, see “Setting Up an Open Directory Replica” on page 88.

Setting Up a Server as a BDC

Using Server Admin, you can set up Mac OS X Server as a Windows BDC. The BDC provides automatic failover and backup of Windows domain login and other Windows client requests for authentication and directory services.

The BDC server can provide other Windows services (SMB services), including file, print, browsing, and Windows Internet Name Service (WINS). The BDC can host home folders for users who have user accounts on the PDC/BDC.

To set up a Windows BDC:

- 1 Make sure the server is an Open Directory replica.

To determine whether a server is an Open Directory replica, open Server Admin and connect to the server, click the triangle to the left of the server (to expand the list), select Open Directory from the expanded services list, then click Overview. The first line of status information states the server’s Open Directory role.

- 2 Open Server Admin and connect to the server.
- 3 Click the triangle to the left of the server.

The list of services appears.

- 4 From the expanded Servers list, select SMB.
- 5 Click Settings, then click General.

- 6 From the Role pop-up menu, choose Backup Domain Controller (BDC), then enter the following:
 - *Description:* This description appears in the Network Places window on Windows computers and is optional.

- **Computer Name:** Enter the name you want Windows users to see when they connect to the server. This is the server's NetBIOS name. The name should contain no more than 15 characters, no special characters, and no punctuation. If practical, make the server name match its unqualified DNS host name. For example, if your DNS server has an entry for your server as "server.example.com," give your server the name "server."
- **Domain:** Enter the name of the Windows domain that the server will host. The domain name cannot exceed 15 characters and cannot be "workgroup."

7 Click Save.

8 Enter the name and password of a user account that can administer the LDAP directory on the server, then click OK.

When authenticating, you must use an LDAP directory administrator account. You can't use a local administrator account, such as the primary server administrator account (user ID 501), to create a BDC.

After setting up a BDC, you may want to change access restrictions, logging detail level, code page, domain browsing, or WINS registration. Then if Windows services aren't running, you can start them. For more information, see *Network Services Administration*.

Setting Up Open Directory Failover

If an Open Directory master or its replicas become unavailable, its client computers with version 10.3–10.5 of Mac OS X or Mac OS X Server automatically find an available replica and connect to it.

Replicas only permit clients to read directory information. Directory information about a replica can't be modified with administration tools such as Workgroup Manager.

Users whose password type is Open Directory can change their passwords on computers that are connected to Open Directory replicas. The replicas synchronize password changes with the master. If the master is unavailable for a while, the replicas synchronize password changes with the master when it becomes available again.

If the Open Directory master fails permanently and you have a current archive of its data, you can restore the data to a new master. Alternatively, you can promote a replica to be the master. For more information, see "Restoring an Open Directory Master" on page 195 and "Promoting an Open Directory Replica" on page 190.

Note: If a failed Open Directory master or replica had client computers with Mac OS X or Mac OS X Server v10.2 or earlier, the v10.2 computers and servers do not automatically fail over to another replica.

If you replace a failed master by promoting a replica to be the master, you can manually reconfigure each computer and server to connect to this new master or one of its replicas. You do this by using Directory Utility on each computer or server to create an LDAPv3 configuration that specifies how the computer accesses the new master or an available replica.

For more information, see “Using Advanced LDAP Service Settings” on page 133.

Setting Up a Connection to a Directory Server

Using Server Admin, you can set up Mac OS X Server to get user records and other directory information from another server’s shared directory domain. The other server also provides authentication for its directory information. Mac OS X Server still gets directory information from its own local directory domain and provides authentication for this local directory information.

Important: Changing Mac OS X Server to be connected to another directory system instead of being an Open Directory master will turn off its shared LDAP directory domain, with the following ramifications:

- User records and other information in the shared directory domain are deleted.
- If other servers were connected to the master directory domain, their services may be disrupted when the user accounts and other information in the deactivated directory domain become unavailable.
- Users who had accounts in the deactivated directory domain may no longer be able to access files and folders on the Open Directory master and on other servers that were connected to the master directory domain.

To configure a server to get directory services from an existing system:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the server.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 4 Click Settings, then click General.
- 5 Click Change.
The Service Configuration Assistant opens.
- 6 Choose “Connected to a directory server,” then click Continue.
- 7 Confirm the Open Directory configuration settings, then click Continue.
- 8 If the server was an Open Directory master and you are sure that users and services no longer need access to the directory data stored in the shared directory domain that the server has been hosting, click Close.

- 9 Click the Open Directory Utility button to configure access to one or more directory systems.

For more information about configuring access to a particular kind of directory service, see Chapter 7, “Managing Directory Clients.”

If you connect Mac OS X Server v10.4 or later to a directory domain of Mac OS X Server v10.3 or earlier, users defined in the older directory domain cannot be authenticated with the NTLMv2 method. This method may be required to securely authenticate some Windows users for the Windows services of Mac OS X Server v10.4 or later.

Open Directory Password Server in Mac OS X Server v10.4 or later supports NTLMv2 authentication, but Password Server in Mac OS X Server v10.3 or earlier does not support NTLMv2.

Similarly, if you configure Mac OS X Server v10.4 or later to access a directory domain of Mac OS X Server version 10.2 or earlier, users defined in the older directory domain cannot be authenticated with the MS-CHAPv2 method. This method may be required to securely authenticate users for the VPN service of Mac OS X Server v10.4 or later.

Open Directory in Mac OS X Server v10.4 supports MS-CHAPv2 authentication, but Password Server in Mac OS X Server version 10.2 does not support MS-CHAPv2.

- 10 If the server you’re configuring has access to a directory system that also hosts a Kerberos realm, you can join the server to the Kerberos realm.

To join the Kerberos realm, you need the name and password of a Kerberos administrator or a user who has been delegated the authority to join the realm. For more information, see “Joining a Server to a Kerberos Realm” on page 102.

Setting Up a Server as a Mac OS X Server PDC Domain Member

Using Server Admin, you can set up Mac OS X Server to join a Windows domain hosted by a Mac OS X Server PDC. A server that joins a Windows domain can provide file, print, and other services to users with accounts on the PDC.

The domain member server gets authentication services from the PDC or a backup domain controller. The server can host user profiles and home folders for users who have user accounts on the PDC. The domain member server does not provide authentication services to other domain member servers.

To join Mac OS X Server to the Windows domain of a Mac OS X Server PDC:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the server.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select SMB.
- 4 Click Settings, then click General.
- 5 From the Role pop-up menu, choose Domain Member, then enter the following:

- *Description:* This description appears in the My Network Places window of Windows XP and 2000 (the Network Neighborhood window of Windows 95, 98, or ME), and is optional.
- *Computer Name:* Enter the name you want Windows users to see when they connect to the server. This is the server's NetBIOS name. The name should contain no more than 15 characters, no special characters, and no punctuation.
If practical, make the server name match its unqualified DNS host name. For example, if your DNS server has an entry for your server as "server.example.com," give your server the name "server."
- *Domain:* Enter the name of the Windows domain that the server will join. The domain must be hosted by a Mac OS X Server PDC. The name cannot exceed 15 characters and cannot be "workgroup."

6 Click Save.

7 Enter the name and password of an LDAP directory administrator account, then click OK.

When authenticating, you must use an LDAP directory administrator account. You can't use a local administrator account, such as the primary server administrator account (user ID 501), to join a Windows domain.

After setting up a Windows domain member, you can change access restrictions, logging detail level, code page, domain browsing, or WINS registration. Then if Windows services aren't running, you can start them.

For more information, see *Network Services Administration*.

Setting Up a Server as an Active Directory Domain Member

Using Server Admin and Directory Utility, you can set up Mac OS X Server to join an Active Directory domain hosted by a Windows 2000 or 2003 server.

A server that joins an Active Directory domain can provide file, print, and other services to users with accounts in the Active Directory domain.

The domain member server gets authentication services from Active Directory. The domain member server does not provide authentication services to other domain member servers.

To join Mac OS X Server to the Active Directory domain of a Windows server:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the server.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 4 Click Setting, then click General.

5 Click Change.

The Service Configuration Assistant opens.

6 Choose “Connected to a directory server,” then click Continue.

7 Confirm the Open Directory configuration settings, then click Continue.

8 Click Close.

9 Click Open Directory Utility.

10 In the lower left corner of Directory Utility, click the lock and authenticate when prompted.

11 Click Show Advanced Settings.

12 Click Directory Servers (at the top).

13 Click the Add (+) button.

14 From the “Add a new directory of type” pop-up menu, choose Active Directory, then enter the following:

- *Active Directory Domain:* This is the DNS name or IP address of the Active Directory server.
- *Computer ID:* Optionally edit the ID you want Active Directory to use for your server. This is the server’s NetBIOS name. The name should contain no more than 15 characters, no special characters, and no punctuation. If practical, make the server name match its unqualified DNS host name. For example, if your DNS server has an entry for your server as “server.example.com,” give your server the name “server.”
- *AD Administrator Username and Password:* Enter the user name and password of the Active Directory administrator.

15 Click OK and close Directory Utility.

16 Click Join Kerberos to join the server to the Active Directory Kerberos realm.

17 Enter the following information:

- *Administrator Name:* Enter the Kerberos server administrator’s user name.
- *Password:* Enter the Kerberos server administrator password.
- *Realm Name:* Enter the realm name of the Kerberos server.
- *DNS/Bonjour Name of KDC:* Enter the DNS or Bonjour name of the Kerberos server.

18 Click OK.

19 From the Servers list, select SMB.

20 Click Settings, then click General.

21 Verify that the server is now a member of the Active Directory domain.

You can change the server’s optional description, which appears in the Network Places window on Windows computers.

After setting up an Active Directory domain member, you may want to change access restrictions, logging detail level, code page, domain browsing, or WINS registration. Then if Windows services aren't already running, you can start them. For more information, see *Network Services Administration*.

Setting Up Single Sign-On Kerberos Authentication

Setting up single sign-on Kerberos authentication involves these tasks:

- DNS must be made available on the network and must be configured to resolve the fully qualified DNS name of the Open Directory master server (or other Kerberos server) to its IP address. DNS must also be configured to resolve the IP address to the server's fully qualified DNS name.
- An administrator must set up a directory system to host a Kerberos realm. For more information about setting up Mac OS X Server to host a Kerberos realm, see "Setting Up an Open Directory Kerberos Realm" on page 98.
- A Kerberos administrator of an Open Directory master can delegate the authority to join servers to the Open Directory master's Kerberos realm. (The administrator does not need delegated authority. A Kerberos administrator has implicit authority to join any server to the Kerberos realm.) See "Delegating Authority to Join an Open Directory Kerberos Realm" on page 100.
- A Kerberos administrator or users with delegated authority must join servers to the Kerberos realm, which then provides single sign-on Kerberos authentication for services provided by the servers that have joined. See "Joining a Server to a Kerberos Realm" on page 102.
- All computers using Kerberos must be set to the correct date, time, and time zone, and they must be configured to use the same network time server. Kerberos depends on the clocks of all participating computers being in sync.

When you are configuring an Open Directory master, make sure your DNS is correctly configured and running before you start Open Directory service for the first time. If DNS is not configured properly or is not running when you start Open Directory, Kerberos will not function properly.

When Open Directory is started for the first time, Kerberos uses DNS service to generate configuration settings. If your DNS server is not available when Kerberos is initially started, its configurations will be invalid and it will not work properly. After Kerberos is running and has generated its configuration file, it will no longer completely depend on DNS and changes to DNS will not affect Kerberos.

The individual services of Mac OS X Server do not require configuration for single sign-on or Kerberos.

The following services are ready for single sign-on Kerberos authentication on every server with Mac OS X Server version 10.5 or later that has joined or is an Open Directory master or replica:

- Login window
- Mail service
- AFP
- FTP
- SMB (as a member of an Active Directory Kerberos realm)
- iChat
- Print service
- NFS
- Xgrid service
- VPN
- Apache web service
- LDAPv3 directory service (on an Open Directory master or replica).

Setting Up an Open Directory Kerberos Realm

You can provide single sign-on Kerberos authentication on your network by setting up an Open Directory master.

You can set up an Open Directory master during initial configuration that follows installation of Mac OS X Server, but if you set up Mac OS X Server to have a different Open Directory role, you can change its role to that of Open Directory master by using Server Admin.

For more information, see “Setting Up an Open Directory Master” on page 83 and “Starting Kerberos After Setting Up an Open Directory Master” on page 99.

A server that is an Open Directory master requires no other configuration to support single sign-on Kerberos authentication for Kerberized services that the server provides.

The server can also support single sign-on Kerberos authentication for Kerberized services of other servers on the network. The other servers must be set up to join the Open Directory Kerberos realm.

For more information, see “Delegating Authority to Join an Open Directory Kerberos Realm” on page 100, and “Joining a Server to a Kerberos Realm” on page 102.

Important: An Open Directory master requires DNS to be properly configured so it can provide Kerberos and single sign-on authentication. In addition:

- DNS service must be configured to resolve the fully qualified DNS names of all servers (including the Open Directory master) to their IP addresses and to provide the corresponding reverse lookups. For more information about setting up DNS service, see *Network Services Administration*.
- The Open Directory master server's Network preferences must be configured to use the DNS server that resolves the server's name. (If the Open Directory master server provides its own DNS service, its Network preferences must be configured to use itself as a DNS server.)

Starting Kerberos After Setting Up an Open Directory Master

If Kerberos doesn't start when you set up an Open Directory master, you can use Server Admin to start it manually, but first you must fix the problem that prevented Kerberos from starting. Usually the problem is that the DNS service isn't correctly configured or isn't running.

Note: After you manually start Kerberos, users whose accounts have Open Directory passwords and were created in the Open Directory master's LDAP directory while Kerberos was stopped may need to reset their passwords the next time they log in. A user account is therefore affected only if all recoverable authentication methods for Open Directory passwords were disabled while Kerberos was stopped.

To start Kerberos manually on an Open Directory master:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the server.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 4 Click Refresh (or choose View > Refresh) and verify the status of Kerberos as reported in the Overview pane.
If Kerberos is running, there's nothing more to do.
- 5 Use Network Utility (in /Applications/Utilities/) to do a DNS lookup of the Open Directory master's DNS name and a reverse lookup of the IP address.
If the server's DNS name or IP address doesn't resolve correctly:
 - In the Network pane of System Preferences, look at the TCP/IP settings for the server's primary network interface (usually built-in Ethernet). Make sure the first DNS server listed is the one that resolves the Open Directory server's name.
 - Check the configuration of DNS service and make sure it's running.
- 6 In Server Admin, select Open Directory for the master server, click Settings, then click General.
- 7 Click Kerberize, then enter the following information:

- *Administrator Name and Password:* You must authenticate as an administrator of the Open Directory master's LDAP directory.
- *Realm Name:* This field is preset to be the same as the server's DNS name converted to capital letters. This is the convention for naming a Kerberos realm. If necessary, you can enter a different name.

Delegating Authority to Join an Open Directory Kerberos Realm

Using Server Admin, you can delegate the authority to join a server to an Open Directory master server for single sign-on Kerberos authentication.

You can delegate authority to one or more user accounts. The user accounts you delegate authority to must have a password type of Open Directory and must reside in the LDAP directory of the Open Directory master server. The dependent server you are delegating authority for must have Mac OS X Server v10.3 or later.

Note: If an account with delegated Kerberos authority is deleted and recreated on the Open Directory master server, the new account will not have authority to join the dependent server to the Open Directory master's Kerberos realm.

A Kerberos administrator (that is, an Open Directory LDAP administrator) doesn't need delegated authority to join dependent servers to the Open Directory Kerberos realm. A Kerberos administrator has implicit authority to join any server to the Kerberos realm.

To delegate authority to join an Open Directory Kerberos realm:

- 1 In Workgroup Manager, create a computer group in the LDAP directory domain of the Open Directory master server, or select an existing computer group in this directory:
 - To select an existing computer group, click Accounts or choose View > Accounts, click the Computer Group button (above the accounts list), and select the computer group you want to use.
 - If the LDAP server doesn't have a computer group that you want to add the dependent server to, you can create one:
Click Accounts, then click the Computers button (above the accounts list).
Click the small globe icon above the list of accounts and use the pop-up menu to open the Open Directory master's LDAP directory.
Click the lock and authenticate as an administrator of the LDAP directory.
Click Computers Group button (above the accounts list), then click New Computer Group or choose Server > New Computer Group.
Enter a list name (for example, Kerberized Servers).
- 2 Click Members, then click the Add (+) button and enter the following:

- *Address*: Enter the Ethernet address of the dependent server's primary Ethernet port. The primary Ethernet port is the first port listed in the Network Status pane of the dependent server's Network preferences address. This port's address appears as the Ethernet ID in the Ethernet pane of Network preferences. If you do not enter the correct Ethernet address, the dependent server cannot join the Open Directory master for Kerberos authentication.
 - *Name*: Enter the fully qualified DNS name of the dependent server, not just its host name. For example, the name might be server2.example.com (not server2). This name is used to create Kerberos principals in the KDC. If this name is incorrect, users cannot authenticate using Kerberos. Your DNS system must have an entry for the dependent server's name and a reverse lookup entry for the dependent server's IP address.
 - *Use this name as the Computer Name*: Does not affect Kerberos operations.
 - *Comment*: Is optional and purely informational.
- 3 Click Save to save your changes to the computer group.
 - 4 Click Preferences and make sure the computer group has no managed preference settings.

If any item in the array of preference categories has a small arrow next to its icon, the item has managed preference settings. To remove managed preferences from an item, click the item, select Not Managed, and click Apply Now. If the item has multiple panes, select Not Managed in each pane, then click Apply Now.
 - 5 If you want to delegate Kerberos authority to one or more user accounts, create the accounts:
 - Make sure you are working in the LDAP directory of the Open Directory master server. If necessary, click the small globe icon and use the pop-up menu to open this directory. Then click the lock and authenticate as an administrator of this directory.
 - Click the Users button (on the left), then click New User or choose Server > New User.
 - Enter a name, short name, and password.
 - Make sure "User can access account" or "User may administer this server" are not selected.

You can change settings in other panes, but do not change the User Password Type setting in the Advanced pane. A user with delegated Kerberos authority must have an Open Directory password.
 - 6 Click Save to save the new user account.
 - 7 Open Server Admin and connect to the Open Directory master server.
 - 8 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
 - 9 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.

- 10 Click Settings, then click General.
- 11 Confirm that the Role is Open Directory Master, then click Add Kerberos Record and enter the following information:
 - *Administrator Name*: Enter the name of an LDAP directory administrator on the Open Directory master server.
 - *Administrator Password*: Enter the password of the administrator account you entered.
 - *Configuration Record Name*: Enter the fully qualified DNS name as you entered it when adding the dependent server to the computer group in step 2.
 - *Delegated Administrators*: Enter a short name or a long name for each user account to which you want to delegate Kerberos authority for the specified server. To prevent problems if this user account is deleted in the future, consider entering at least two names.
- 12 Click Add, then click Save to delegate Kerberos authority as specified.

To delegate authority for more than one dependent server, repeat this procedure for each one.

For more information about joining a server to an Open Directory Kerberos realm, see “Joining a Server to a Kerberos Realm” on page 102.

Joining a Server to a Kerberos Realm

Using Server Admin, a Kerberos administrator or a user whose account has the properly delegated authority can join Mac OS X Server to a Kerberos realm.

The server can join only one Kerberos realm. It can be an Open Directory Kerberos realm, an Active Directory Kerberos realm, or an existing realm based on MIT Kerberos.

To join an Open Directory Kerberos realm, you need a Kerberos administrator account or a user account with delegated Kerberos authority. For more information, see “Delegating Authority to Join an Open Directory Kerberos Realm” on page 100.

To join a server to a Kerberos realm:

- 1 Make sure the server you want to join to the Kerberos realm is configured to access the shared directory domain of the Kerberos server.

To confirm, open Directory Utility on the server you want to join to the Kerberos realm or connect to the server using Directory Utility on another computer. Click Search Policy, then click Authentication and make sure the Kerberos server’s directory domain is listed. If it is not listed, see Chapter 7, “Managing Directory Clients,” for instructions on configuring access to the directory.
- 2 Open Server Admin and connect to the server you want to join to the Kerberos realm.

3 Click the triangle to the left of the server.

The list of services appears.

4 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.

5 Click Settings, then click General.

6 Confirm that the Role is Connected to a Directory Server, then click Join Kerberos and enter the following information:

- For an Open Directory Kerberos realm or an Active Directory Kerberos realm, choose the realm from the pop-up menu and enter the name and password of a Kerberos administrator or a user with delegated Kerberos authority for the server.
- For an MIT-based Kerberos realm, enter the name and password of a Kerberos administrator, the Kerberos realm name, and the DNS name of the Kerberos KDC server.

Learn how to reset user passwords, change password types, set password policies, select authentication methods, and perform other tasks using Workgroup Manager.

Workgroup Manager provides a centralized method of managing Mac OS X computers to control access to software and removable media, and to provide a consistent environment for different users. You also use Workgroup Manager to manage user authentication. For more information on Workgroup Manager, see *User Management*.

You can manage the user authentication information stored in directory domains. For task descriptions and instructions, see:

- “Composing a Password” on page 106
- “Changing a User’s Password” on page 106
- “Resetting the Passwords of Multiple Users” on page 107
- “Changing a User’s Password Type” on page 108
This includes changing the password type to Open Directory, shadow password, or crypt password; and enabling single sign-on Kerberos.
- “Enabling Single Sign-On Kerberos Authentication for a User” on page 111
- “Changing the Global Password Policy” on page 111
- “Setting Password Policies for Individual Users” on page 112
- “Selecting Authentication Methods for Shadow Password Users” on page 113
- “Selecting Authentication Methods for Open Directory Passwords” on page 114
- “Assigning Administrator Rights for Open Directory Authentication” on page 115
- “Keeping the Primary Administrator’s Passwords in Sync” on page 116
- “Enabling LDAP Bind Authentication for a User” on page 116
- “Setting Passwords of Exported or Imported Users” on page 117
- “Migrating Passwords From Mac OS X Server v10.1 or Earlier” on page 117

Composing a Password

The password associated with a user's account must be entered by the user when he or she authenticates for login or other services. The password is case sensitive (except for SMB-LAN Manager passwords) and is masked on the screen as it is entered.

Regardless of the password type you choose for a user, here are guidelines for composing a password for Mac OS X Server user accounts:

- A password should contain letters, numbers, and symbols in combinations that won't be easily guessed by unauthorized users. Passwords should not consist of words. Good passwords include digits and symbols (such as # or \$), or they consist of the first letter of all words in a phrase. Use both uppercase and lowercase letters.
- Avoid spaces and Option-key combinations.
- Avoid characters that can't be entered on computers the user will be using or that might require knowing a special keystroke combination to enter correctly on different keyboards and platforms.
- Some network protocols do not support passwords that contain leading spaces, embedded spaces, or trailing spaces.
- A zero-length password is not recommended. Open Directory and some systems (such as LDAP bind) do not support a zero-length password.
- For maximum compatibility with computers and services your users might access, use only ASCII characters for passwords.

Changing a User's Password

You can use Workgroup Manager to change the password of a user account defined in any directory domain you have read/write access to. For example, you can change the password of a user account in the LDAP directory of an Open Directory master.

Important: If you change the password of a user account that's used to authenticate a computer's LDAP directory connection, you must make the same change to the affected computer's LDAP connection settings or configure the LDAP directory and all connections to it to use trusted binding.

For more information, see "Changing the Password Used for Authenticating an LDAP Connection" on page 153 or "Setting a Binding Policy for an Open Directory Server" on page 184 and "Stopping Trusted Binding with an LDAP Directory" on page 150.

To change a user's password:

- 1 Open Workgroup Manager, click the Accounts button, then click the User button.
- 2 Open the directory domain that contains the user account whose password you want to change, and authenticate as an administrator of the domain.

To open a directory domain, click the small globe icon above the list of users and choose from the pop-up menu.

If the user's password type is Open Directory, you must authenticate as an administrator whose password type is Open Directory.

- 3 Select the account whose password needs to be changed.
- 4 Enter a password in the Basic pane, then click Save.
- 5 Tell the user the new password so he or she can log in.

After the user logs in to Mac OS X with the new password, the user can change the password by clicking Accounts in System Preferences.

If you change the password of an account whose password type is Open Directory and the account resides in the LDAP directory of an Open Directory replica or master, the change becomes synchronized with the master and its replicas. Mac OS X Server synchronizes changes to Open Directory passwords among a master and its replicas.

Resetting the Passwords of Multiple Users

You can use Workgroup Manager to simultaneously select multiple user accounts and change them to have the same password type and the same temporary password.

To change the password type and password of multiple user accounts:

- 1 Open Workgroup Manager, click the Accounts button, then click the User button.
- 2 Open the directory domain that contains the user account whose password types and passwords you want to reset and authenticate as an administrator of the domain.

To open a directory domain, click the small globe icon above the list of users and choose from the pop-up menu.

If you want to set the password type to be Open Directory, you must authenticate as an administrator whose password type is Open Directory.

- 3 Command-click or Shift-click user accounts to select accounts whose password type must be changed.
- 4 Enter a password in the Basic pane, then set the User Password Type option in the Advanced pane.
- 5 Click Save.
- 6 Tell the users the temporary password so they can log in.

After logging in with the temporary password, a user can change the password by clicking Accounts in System Preferences.

If you change the password of accounts whose password type is Open Directory and the accounts reside in the LDAP directory of an Open Directory replica or master, the change becomes synchronized with the master and its replicas. Mac OS X Server synchronizes changes to Open Directory passwords among a master and its replicas.

Changing a User's Password Type

You can set the password type in the Advanced pane of Workgroup Manager to one of the following:

- *Open Directory*: Enables multiple legacy authentication methods and also enables single sign-on Kerberos authentication if the user's account is in the LDAP directory of an Open Directory master or replica. Open Directory passwords are stored separately from the directory domain in the Open Directory Password Server database and the Kerberos KDC. See "Changing the Password Type to Open Directory" on page 108.
- *Shadow password*: Enables multiple legacy authentication methods for user accounts in the local directory domain. Shadow passwords are stored separately from the directory domain in files readable only by the root user account. See "Changing the Password Type to Shadow Password" on page 110.
- *Crypt password*: Provides basic authentication for a user account in a shared directory domain. A crypt password is stored in the user account record in the directory domain. A crypt password is required to log in to Mac OS X v10.1 or earlier. See "Changing the Password Type to Crypt Password" on page 110.

Changing the Password Type to Open Directory

Using Workgroup Manager, you can specify that a user account have an Open Directory password stored in secure databases apart from the directory domain. User accounts in the following directory domains can have Open Directory passwords:

- LDAP directory domain on Mac OS X Server v10.3–10.5
- Local directory domain of Mac OS X Server v10.3 or a server upgraded from v10.3
- Directory domain on Mac OS X Server v10.2 that is configured to use a Password Server

The Open Directory password type supports single sign-on using Kerberos authentication. It also supports the Open Directory Password Server, which offers Simple Authentication and Security Layer (SASL) authentication protocols, including APOP, CRAM-MD5, DHX, Digest-MD5, MS-CHAPv2, NTLMv2, NTLM (also referred to as Windows NT or SMB-NT), LAN Manager (LM), and WebDAV-Digest.

Note: To set a user account's password type to Open Directory, you must have administrator rights for Open Directory authentication in the directory domain that contains the user account. This means you must authenticate as a directory domain administrator whose password type is Open Directory. For more information, see "Assigning Administrator Rights for Open Directory Authentication" on page 115.

To specify that a user account have an Open Directory password:

- 1 Make sure the user's account resides in a directory domain that supports Open Directory authentication.

The directory domains that support Open Directory authentication are listed earlier in this topic.

- 2 In Workgroup Manager, open the account you want to work with (if it is not open).

To open an account, click the Accounts button, then click the Users button. Click the small globe icon above the list of users and choose from the pop-up menu to open the directory domain where the user's account resides. Click the lock and authenticate as a directory domain administrator whose password type is Open Directory. Then select the user in the list.

- 3 Click Advanced.

- 4 From the User Password Type pop-up menu, choose Open Directory.

- 5 When prompted, enter and verify a new password.

The password must contain no more than 512 bytes (512 characters or fewer, depending on the language), although the network authentication protocol can impose different limits; for example, 128 characters for NTLMv2 and NTLM and 14 for LAN Manager. "Composing a Password" on page 106 provides guidelines for choosing passwords.

- 6 In the Advanced pane, click Options to set up the user's password policy, and click OK after you finish specifying options.

If you select "Disable login: on specific date," use the up and down arrows to set the date.

If you select an option that requires resetting (changing) the password, remember that not all protocols support changing passwords. For example, users can't change their passwords when authenticating for IMAP mail service.

The password ID is a unique 128-bit number assigned when the password is created in the Open Directory Password Server database. It can be helpful for troubleshooting, because it appears in the Password Server log when a problem occurs. For more information, see "Viewing Open Directory Status and Logs" on page 178. View this Open Directory log in Server Admin.

- 7 Click Save.

Changing the Password Type to Crypt Password

If necessary, you can use Workgroup Manager to specify a crypt password for a user's account. You can only use crypt passwords for a user account in a shared directory domain. The user account can be part of an LDAP directory domain or a legacy shared NetInfo domain (only available when connected to a Mac OS X Server v10.4, v10.3, or v10.2).

User accounts not used on computers that require a crypt password should have an Open Directory password or a shadow password. A crypt password is required only for logging in to a computer with Mac OS X v10.1 or earlier and on computers with some types of UNIX.

A crypt password is stored as an encrypted value, or hash, in the user account record in the directory domain. Because the crypt password can be recovered from the directory domain, it is subject to offline attack and is less secure than other password types.

To specify that a user account have a crypt password:

- 1 In Workgroup Manager, open the account you want to work with (if it is not open).
To open an account, click the Accounts button, then click the Users button. Click the small globe icon above the list of users and choose from the pop-up menu to open the directory domain where the user's account resides. Click the lock and authenticate as a directory domain administrator, then select the user in the list.
- 2 Click Advanced.
- 3 From the User Password Type pop-up menu, choose Crypt Password.
- 4 When prompted, enter and verify a password.
A crypt password can be at most eight bytes (eight ASCII characters) long. If you enter a longer password, only the first eight bytes are used.
- 5 Click Save.

Changing the Password Type to Shadow Password

Using Workgroup Manager, you can specify that a user have a shadow password stored in a secure file apart from the directory domain. Only users whose accounts reside in the local directory domain can have a shadow password.

To specify that a user account have a shadow password:

- 1 In Workgroup Manager, open the account you want to work with (if it is not open).
To open an account, click the Accounts button, then click the Users button. Click the small globe icon above the list of users and choose from the pop-up menu to open the local directory domain where the user's account resides. Click the lock and authenticate as a directory domain administrator, then select the user in the list.
- 2 Click Advanced.

- 3 From the User Password Type pop-up menu, choose Shadow Password.
Note: You can only assign local user accounts to use shadow passwords.
- 4 When prompted, enter and verify a password.

A long password is truncated for some authentication methods. Up to 128 characters of the password are used for NTLMv2 and NTLM, and the first 14 characters are used for LAN Manager.

For guidelines on choosing passwords, see “Composing a Password” on page 106.
- 5 In the Advanced pane, click Options to set up the user’s password policy, then click OK after you finish specifying options.

If you select “Disable login: on specific date,” use the up and down arrows to set the date.

If you use a policy that requires user password changing, remember that not all protocols support changing passwords. For example, users can’t change their passwords when authenticating for IMAP mail service.
- 6 In the Advanced pane, click Security to enable or disable authentication methods for the user, then click OK after you finish.

For more information, see “Setting Password Policies for Individual Users” on page 112.
- 7 Click Save.

Enabling Single Sign-On Kerberos Authentication for a User

You enable single sign-on Kerberos authentication for a user account in an LDAP directory of Mac OS X Server by setting the account’s password type to Open Directory in the Advanced pane of Workgroup Manager.

Changing the Global Password Policy

Using Server Admin, you can set a global password policy for user accounts in a Mac OS X Server directory domain.

The global password policy affects user accounts in the server’s local directory domain. If the server is an Open Directory master or replica, the global password policy also affects user accounts that have an Open Directory password type in the server’s LDAP directory domain.

If you change the global password policy on an Open Directory replica, the policy settings become synchronized with the master and any other replicas of it.

Administrator accounts are exempt from password policies. Each user can have an individual password policy that overrides global password policy settings. For more information, see “Setting Password Policies for Individual Users” on page 112.

Kerberos and Open Directory Password Server maintain password policies separately. Mac OS X Server synchronizes the Kerberos password policy rules with Open Directory Password Server password policy rules.

To change the global password policy of user accounts in the same domain:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to an Open Directory master or replica server.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 4 Click Settings, then click Policy.
- 5 Click Passwords, then set the password policy options you want enforced for users who do not have individual password policies.

If you select an option that requires resetting the password, remember that some service protocols don't permit users to change passwords. For example, users can't change their passwords when authenticating for IMAP mail service.

- 6 Click Save.

Replicas of the Open Directory master automatically inherit its global password policy.

From the Command Line

You can also set password policies by using the `pwdpolicy` command in Terminal. For more information, see the Open Directory chapter of *Command-Line Administration*.

Setting Password Policies for Individual Users

Using Workgroup Manager, you can set password policies for user accounts whose password type is Open Directory or Shadow Password. The password policy for a user overrides the global password policy defined in the Authentication Settings pane of Open Directory service in Server Admin.

The password policy for a mobile user account applies when the account is used while the mobile computer is disconnected from the network. The password policy from the corresponding network user account applies while the mobile computer is connected to the network.

Administrator accounts are exempt from password policies.

To set a password policy for a user account that has an Open Directory password, you must have administrator rights for Open Directory authentication in the directory domain that contains the user account. This means you must authenticate as a directory domain administrator whose password type is Open Directory.

For more information, see “Assigning Administrator Rights for Open Directory Authentication” on page 115.

Kerberos and Open Directory Password Server maintain password policies separately. Mac OS X Server synchronizes Kerberos password policy rules with Open Directory Password Server password policy rules.

Do not use the Options button in the Advanced pane to set up password policies for directory domain administrators. Password policies are not enforced for administrator accounts. Directory domain administrators must be able to change the password policies of user accounts.

To change the password policy for a user account:

- 1 In Workgroup Manager, open the account you want to work with (if it is not open).
To open an account, click the Accounts button, then click the Users button. Click the small globe icon above the list of users and choose from the pop-up menu to open the directory domain where the user’s account resides. Click the lock and authenticate as a directory domain administrator whose password type is Open Directory. Then select the user in the list.
- 2 Click Advanced, then click Options.
You can click Options only if the password type is Open Directory or Shadow Password.
- 3 Change password policy options, then click OK.
If you select an option that requires resetting (changing) the password, remember that some service protocols don’t permit users to change passwords. For example, users can’t change their passwords when authenticating for IMAP mail service.
- 4 Click Save.

From the Command Line

You can also set password policies by using the `pwpolicy` command in Terminal. For more information, see the Open Directory chapter of *Command-Line Administration*.

Selecting Authentication Methods for Shadow Password Users

Using Workgroup Manager, you can select which authentication methods will be available for a user account whose password type is Shadow Password.

A shadow password supports available authentication methods for compatibility with client software. If you know the user will never use client software that requires a particular authentication method, you can disable the method. For more information, see “Disabling Shadow Password Authentication Methods” on page 55.

If you disable an authentication method, its hash is removed from the user's shadow password file the next time the user authenticates.

If you enable an authentication method that was disabled, the enabled method's hash is added to the user's shadow password file the next time the user authenticates for a service that can use a clear text password, such as a login window or AFP.

Alternatively, the user's password can be reset to add the newly enabled method's hash. The user can reset the password, or a directory administrator can do it.

To enable or disable authentications for user accounts whose password type is Open Directory, see the next topic.

To enable or disable authentication methods for a Shadow Password user:

- 1 In Workgroup Manager, open the account you want to work with (if it is not open).
To open an account, click the Accounts button, then click the Users button. Click the small globe icon above the list of users and choose from the pop-up menu to open the local directory domain where the user's account resides. Click the lock and authenticate as a directory domain administrator. Then select the user in the list.
- 2 Click Advanced, then click Security.
You can click Security only if the password type is Shadow Password.
- 3 Select the authentication methods you want enabled, deselect the authentication methods you want disabled, then click OK.
- 4 Click Save.

From the Command Line

You can also enable or disable authentication methods for a user with a shadow password by using the `pwpolicy` command in Terminal. For more information, see the Open Directory chapter of *Command-Line Administration*.

Selecting Authentication Methods for Open Directory Passwords

Using Server Admin, you can select which authentication methods will be available for user accounts whose password type is Open Directory. The Open Directory Password Server supports the available authentication methods for compatibility with client software. If you know that users will never use client software that requires a particular authentication method, you can disable the method.

For more information, see "Disabling Open Directory Authentication Methods" on page 54.

Important: If you disable an authentication method, its hash is removed from the password database the next time the user authenticates. If you enable an authentication method that was disabled, every Open Directory password must be reset to add the enabled method's hash to the password database. The user can reset the password, or a directory administrator can do it.

To enable or disable authentication methods for user accounts whose password type is Shadow Password, see “Setting Password Policies for Individual Users” on page 112.

To enable or disable authentication methods for Open Directory passwords:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to an Open Directory master server.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 4 Click Settings, then click Policy.
- 5 Click Authentication, select the authentication methods you want enabled, and deselect the authentication methods you want disabled.
- 6 Click Save.

Replicas of the Open Directory master inherit the authentication method settings for Open Directory passwords in the LDAP directory.

From the Command Line

You can also enable or disable Password Server authentication methods for Open Directory passwords by using the `NeST` command with the `-getprotocols` and `-setprotocols` arguments in Terminal. For more information, see the Open Directory chapter of *Command-Line Administration*.

Assigning Administrator Rights for Open Directory Authentication

Using Workgroup Manager and an administrator account with rights to work with Open Directory password settings, you can assign these rights to other user accounts in the same directory domain.

To assign these rights, your user account must have an Open Directory password and privileges to administer user accounts. This requirement protects the security of passwords stored in the Kerberos KDC and the Open Directory Password Server database.

To assign administrator rights for Open Directory authentication to a user account:

- 1 In Workgroup Manager, open the account, click Advanced, and make sure Password Type is set to Open Directory password.

For more information, see “Changing the Password Type to Open Directory” on page 108.

- 2 Click Privileges and choose Full in the Administration capabilities pop-up menu.
To restrict the administration capabilities, choose Limited.

- 3 Click Save.

For more information about setting administrator privileges, see *User Management*.

Keeping the Primary Administrator’s Passwords in Sync

For Mac OS X Server v10.3, having different passwords for the primary local administrator account and the LDAP administrator account (user ID 501) can be confusing. Therefore, keep the passwords the same. On an Open Directory server upgraded from Mac OS X Server version 10.3, the primary administrator account normally exists in the server’s local directory domain and in its LDAP directory. This account was copied from the local directory domain to the LDAP directory when the Open Directory master was created with Mac OS X Server v10.3.

Initially both copies of this account have user ID 501, the same name, and the same password. Each account is an administrator of its directory domain, and both are server administrators.

When you connect to the server in Workgroup Manager using the account’s common name and password, you are authenticated for the local directory domain and the LDAP directory domain.

If you change either password, you will no longer be authenticated for both directory domains. For example, if you use the local administrator’s password when you connect to the server in Workgroup Manager, you can make changes only in the local directory domain. To make changes in the LDAP directory, you must click the lock and authenticate using the LDAP administrator’s password.

Note: An Open Directory server created with Mac OS X Server v10.5 has different administrator accounts for its local and LDAP directories. They have different names and user IDs, so their passwords can be different without causing confusion.

Enabling LDAP Bind Authentication for a User

You can enable the use of LDAP bind authentication for a user account stored in an LDAP directory domain. When you use this password validation technique, you rely on the LDAP server that contains the user account to authenticate the user’s password.

Important: If your computer name contains a hyphen, you might not be able to join or bind to a directory domain such as LDAP or Active Directory. To establish binding, use a computer name that does not contain a hyphen.

To enable LDAP bind user authentication:

- 1 Make sure the Mac OS X computer that needs to authenticate the user account has a connection to the LDAP directory where the user account resides and that the computer's search policy includes the LDAP directory connection.

For information about configuring LDAP server connections and the search policy, see "Using Advanced LDAP Service Settings" on page 133.

- 2 If you configure an LDAP connection that doesn't map the password and authentication authority attributes, bind authentication will occur automatically.

For more information, see "Configuring LDAP Searches and Mappings" on page 146.

- 3 If you configure the connection to permit clear text passwords, you should also configure it to use SSL to protect the clear text password while it is in transit.

For more information, see "Changing the Security Policy for an LDAP Connection" on page 145 and "Changing the Connection Settings for an LDAP Directory" on page 144.

Setting Passwords of Exported or Imported Users

When you export user accounts whose password type is Open Directory or shadow password, passwords are not exported. This protects the security of the Open Directory Password Server database and shadow password files.

Before importing, you can use a spreadsheet application to open the file of exported users and set their passwords, which they can change the next time they log in. For instructions for working with files of exported users, see *User Management*.

After importing user accounts, you have the following options for setting passwords:

- You can set all imported accounts to use a temporary password, which each user can change the next time he or she logs in. For more information, see "Resetting the Passwords of Multiple Users" on page 107.
- You can set the password of each imported user account in the Basic pane of Workgroup Manager. For more information, see "Changing a User's Password" on page 106.

Migrating Passwords From Mac OS X Server v10.1 or Earlier

User accounts can be migrated from earlier versions of Mac OS X Server by importing the account records or upgrading the server where they reside.

User accounts created with Mac OS X Server v10.1 or earlier have no authentication authority attribute but they do have crypt passwords. For compatibility with such user accounts, Mac OS X Server assumes that a user account without an authentication authority attribute has a crypt password.

If you import user accounts from Mac OS X Server v10.1 or earlier, the user accounts have no authentication authority attribute. Therefore, these user accounts are initially configured to have crypt passwords.

If you import these user accounts to the server's local directory domain, each is converted from crypt password to shadow password when the user or administrator changes the password or when the user authenticates to a service that can use a recoverable authentication method.

For information about importing user accounts, see *User Management*.

Likewise, if you upgrade from Mac OS X Server v10.1 or earlier, user accounts created before upgrading have no authentication authority attribute. After upgrading, these user accounts are assumed to have crypt passwords.

Although existing crypt passwords can continue to be used after importing or upgrading, you can change user accounts to have Open Directory or shadow passwords.

You can change individual user accounts or multiple user accounts by using Workgroup Manager. Changing a user account's password type resets the password. For more information, see "Changing the Password Type to Open Directory" on page 108 and "Changing the Password Type to Shadow Password" on page 110.

Some user accounts created with Mac OS X Server v10.1 or earlier may use Authentication Manager. It is a legacy technology for authenticating users of Windows file service and users of Apple file service whose Mac OS 8 computers have not been upgraded with AFP client software version 3.8.3 or later.

When migrating Authentication Manager users, you have the following options:

- If you upgrade first from Mac OS X Server v10.1 to v10.2 and then to v10.5, existing users can continue to use their same passwords.
- You can change some or all upgraded user accounts to have Open Directory passwords or shadow passwords, which are more secure than crypt passwords. For more information, see *Open Directory Administration*.
- If the upgraded server has a shared NetInfo domain and you migrate it to an LDAP directory, all user accounts are converted to Open Directory passwords.
- Each user account in the server's local directory domain is converted from crypt password to shadow password when the user or administrator changes the password or when the user authenticates to a service that can use a recoverable authentication method.
- If you import user accounts that use Authentication Manager into the LDAP directory, they are converted during importing to have Open Directory passwords.

Use Directory Utility to configure and manage how a computer with Mac OS X or Mac OS X Server accesses directory services.

After you configure your directory server, you can connect client computers using Directory Utility. You can use Directory Utility to connect to remote computers and change their settings, simplifying computer management.

Connecting Clients to Directory Servers

The following sections discuss how to add, remove, edit, and monitor directory servers in the Directory Servers list of Directory Utility.

- “About Directory Server Connections” on page 119
- “Automated Client Configuration” on page 120
- “Adding an Active Directory Server Connection” on page 121
- “Adding an Open Directory Server Connection” on page 121
- “Removing a Directory Server Connection” on page 122
- “Editing a Directory Server Connection” on page 122
- “Monitoring Directory Server Connections” on page 123

About Directory Server Connections

You can use Directory Utility to connect computers to directory servers. The Directory Servers pane in Directory Utility lists the directory servers your computer is connected to. Your Mac OS X computer accesses the servers in the list for user information and other administrative data stored in the directory domain of directory servers.

When you add or delete a server in the Directory Servers list, the entries associated with that directory server are added or deleted from the Services, Authentication, and Contacts list. However, if you remove the associated entries within the Services, Authentication, and Contacts list, the directory server is not removed from the Directory Servers list.

Mac OS X v10.5 computers can connect to an Open Directory, Active Directory, or Mac OS X Server directory server. If you don't know which server to connect to, ask your network administrator.

Important: If your computer name contains a hyphen, you might not be able to join or bind to a directory domain such as LDAP or Active Directory. To establish binding, use a computer name that does not contain a hyphen.

Automated Client Configuration

When you connect to an Open Directory domain that is a standard or workgroup configuration of Mac OS X server, Directory Utility assists you in setting up your computer.

To connect to a standard or workgroup configuration server:

- 1 Open Directory Utility (in /Applications/Utilities/).
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 Click Directory Servers, then click the Add (+) button.
- 4 From the "Add a new directory of type" pop-up menu, choose Open Directory.
- 5 In the "Server Name or IP Address" field, enter the server name or IP address.
- 6 (Conditional) Before you select the "Encrypt using SSL" checkbox, check with your Open directory administrator to determine if SSL is needed.
- 7 In the Introduction pane, a list of services offered by the server you are connecting to are displayed, click Begin Setup.
- 8 Enter the Authentication information for the server you are connecting to.

In the name and password field, enter the administrator name and password for the server you are connecting to.

Enter the password for the user account that appears in "Enter the password for the account *username* on this computer."
- 9 Click Continue.
- 10 Under Configuration Options, choose to let Directory Utility configure your applications or not.

Select Yes if you want the server to configure your application to use services that it offers.

Select No to bypass this configuration.
- 11 Click Continue.
- 12 Click Finish Setup.

Directory Utility configures your computer.

- 13 Click Log Out to log out of the computer.

To use the new services, log back in.

Click Don't Log Out if you want to stay logged in to the server.

Adding an Active Directory Server Connection

When connecting to an Active Directory server, you must know the server name or IP address and have the Active Directory administrator user name and password.

To add an Active Directory Server:

- 1 Open Directory Utility (in /Applications/Utilities/).
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 Click the Add (+) button.
- 4 From the "Add a new directory of type" pop-up menu, choose Active Directory, then enter the following information:
 - *Active Directory Domain:* This is the DNS name or IP address of the Active Directory server.
 - *Computer ID:* Optionally edit the ID you want Active Directory to use for your server. This is the server's NetBIOS name. The name should contain no more than 15 characters, no special characters, and no punctuation. If practical, make the server name match its unqualified DNS host name. For example, if your DNS server has an entry for your server as "server.example.com," give your server the name "server."
 - *AD Administrator Username and Password:* Enter the user name and password of the Active Directory administrator.
- 5 Click OK.

Adding an Open Directory Server Connection

When adding an Open Directory server, you must know the server name or IP address and whether the server uses secure socket layer (SSL).

To add an Open Directory Server:

- 1 Open Directory Utility (in /Applications/Utilities/).
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 Click the Add (+) button.
- 4 From the "Add a new directory of type" pop-up menu, choose Open Directory.
- 5 In the "Server Name or IP Address" field, enter the server name or IP address.
- 6 (Conditional) Before you select the "Encrypt using SSL" checkbox, ask your Open directory administrator if SSL is needed.

Important: If you change your IP address and computer name using changeip while you are connected to a directory server, you must disconnect and reconnect to the directory server to update the directory with the new computer name and IP address. If you do not disconnect and reconnect to the directory server, the directory will not update and will continue to use the old computer name and IP address.

Removing a Directory Server Connection

Before removing a directory server from Directory Utility, make sure you are not using its services for other applications.

For example, if Mail is configured to use the directory server to search for people and you delete the directory server, you can't search for anyone that was on that directory server.

To delete a Directory server:

- 1 Open Directory Utility (in /Applications/Utilities/).
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 From the Directory Servers list, select the directory server you want to delete.
- 4 Click the Delete (–) button.
- 5 If you are sure you have selected the correct directory server, click Stop Using Server.

Editing a Directory Server Connection

You can use Directory Utility to edit directory servers you are connected to.

To edit a Directory server connection:

- 1 Open Directory Utility (in /Applications/Utilities/).
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 From the Directory Servers list, select the directory server you want to edit.
- 4 Click the Edit (/) button.
- 5 Change the directory server settings.
- 6 Click OK.

Monitoring Directory Server Connections

You can use the Directory Servers list of Directory Utility to monitor the status of directory servers your computer is connected to. This information can help when you are trying to determine why you can't connect to a specific directory server.

To monitor the status of a Directory server:

- 1 Open Directory Utility (in /Applications/Utilities/).
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 Note the color of the status dot to the left of the directory server:
 - **Green:** The directory server is responding to Directory Utility.
 - **Yellow:** Directory Utility is waiting for a response from the directory server.
 - **Red:** The directory server is not responding to Directory Utility.

Managing the Root User Account

You can use Directory Utility to manage the root user account by enabling or disabling the root user. If you enabled the root user account, you can also use Directory Utility to change the root account password.

Enabling the Root User Account

You can use Directory Utility to enable the root user account. If you enable the root user account, use a well-encrypted password that contains alphanumeric and special characters, to prevent the password from being compromised.

WARNING: The root account is an unrestricted administrator account used to perform changes to critical system files. Even if you are logged in as an administrator, you must still use the root account, or `sudo`, to perform critical system tasks.

Never use the root account to log in to a computer (remotely or locally). Instead, use `sudo` to perform root tasks. You can restrict access to `sudo` by adding users to the `/etc/sudoers/` file.

For more information about the root account, see *User Management*.

To enable the root user account:

- 1 Open Directory Utility (in /Applications/Utilities/).
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 Choose Edit > Enable Root User.

Changing the Root User Account Password

You can use Directory Utility to change the root account password. When changing the root password, use a well-encrypted password that contains alphanumeric and special characters, to prevent the password from being compromised.

WARNING: The root account is an unrestricted administrator account used to perform changes to critical system files. Even if you are logged in as an administrator, you must still use the root account, or `sudo`, to perform critical system tasks.

Never use the root account to log in to a computer (remotely or locally). Instead, use `sudo` to perform root tasks. You can restrict access to `sudo` by adding users to the `/etc/sudoers/` file.

For more information about the root account, see *User Management*.

To change the root user account password:

- 1 Open Directory Utility (in `/Applications/Utilities/`).
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 Choose `Edit > Change Root Password`.
- 4 When prompted, enter the new root password in the Password and Verify fields.
- 5 Click OK.

Use Directory Utility to set up and manage how a computer with Mac OS X or Mac OS X Server accesses directory services.

After you configure your directory server, you can customize the advanced settings of Directory Utility to work with your computer and software applications.

For setup and management task descriptions and instructions, see:

- “Setting Up Directory Utility on a Remote Server” on page 126
- “Configuring Mount Records for a Computer’s Local Directory Domain” on page 126
- “Using Advanced Search Policy Settings” on page 128
- “Using Advanced Directory Services Settings” on page 132
- “Using Advanced LDAP Service Settings” on page 133
- “Using Advanced Active Directory Service Settings” on page 156
- “Specifying NIS Settings” on page 170
- “Specifying BSD Configuration File Settings” on page 171

About Advanced Directory Services Settings

You can use the advanced features of Directory Utility to configure NFS mount records, services, and search policies. You can also use Directory Utility to configure a remote computer.

The following are the advanced features of Directory Utility:

- **Connect** is used to configure a client computer or server remotely.
- **Mounts** is used to configure NFS mounts that mount when the computer restarts.
- **Services** is used to configure directory servers that users can access.
- **Search Policy** is used to configure where the computer searches for user authentication and contact information.

Setting Up Directory Utility on a Remote Server

You can use the Directory Utility application on your computer to set up and manage how Mac OS X Server on a remote server accesses directory services.

To configure directory access on a remote server:

- 1 Open Directory Utility on your computer, then from the File menu choose Connect.
- 2 Enter the following connection and authentication information for the server you want to configure.

Address: Enter the DNS name or IP address of the server you want to configure.

User Name: Enter the user name of an administrator on the server.

Password: Enter the password for the user name you entered.

- 3 Click Connect.
- 4 Click the Directory Servers, Mounts, Services, and Search Policy tabs and change settings as needed.

All changes you make affect the remote server that you connected to in the previous steps.

- 5 From the File menu on your computer, choose Disconnect.

Configuring Mount Records for a Computer's Local Directory Domain

You can use Directory Utility to configure NFS mounts for your computer. NFS mounts are share points hosted by an NFS server. You can use NFS share points to share information with a group of users on a network or for a user's network-based home folder.

If you use Directory Utility to configure NFS mounts on your computer, the mounts will mount when the computer starts up. NFS mounts are listed in the Mounts pane of Directory Utility. The Mounts pane shows you the NFS URL and the location of the NFS mounts on the computer.

Adding a Mount Record to the Local Directory Domain

When adding an NFS server make sure you have the URL of the NFS server you are adding and that you have access to the NFS share point.

To add a mount record:

- 1 Open Directory Utility (in /Applications/Utilities/).
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 Click Show Advanced Settings (if they aren't visible).

- 4 Click Mounts, then click the Add (+) button.
- 5 Enter the setting for the NFS mount by doing the following:
 - In the “Remote NFS URL” field, enter the NFS URL.
 - In the “Mount location” field, enter the local mount point for the NFS mount.
 - To add mount parameters, click the triangle to the left of “Advanced Mount Parameters” and enter your parameters.
 - To mount the NFS volume as read only, select the “Mount as read-only” checkbox.
 - If you want the NFS mount point to ignore user ID privileges, select the “Ignore ‘set user ID’ privileges” checkbox.
- 6 To verify that the NFS server is responding, click Verify; otherwise, click Don’t Verify.
 - If Directory Utility receives a response from the NFS server, a prompt indicating a successful response appears.
 - If Directory Utility does not receive a response from the NFS server, you can create the mount by clicking Create.
- 7 Click Apply.
 - The NFS mounts are visible in the Mounts pane of Directory Utility.

Removing a Mount Record from the Local Directory Domain

When removing an NFS mount from Directory Utility, make sure you don’t delete your NFS home folder mount record. If you do you will lose access to your data.

To remove a mount record:

- 1 Open Directory Utility (in /Applications/Utilities/).
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 Click Show Advanced Settings (if they aren’t visible).
- 4 Click Mounts.
- 5 From the Mounts list, select the NFS mount you want to delete.
- 6 Click the Delete (–) button.
- 7 If you are sure you have selected the correct NFS mount, click Delete.

Editing a Mount Record in the Local Directory Domain

You can use Directory Utility to change the settings of an existing NFS mount record.

To edit a mount record:

- 1 Open Directory Utility (in /Applications/Utilities/).
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 Click Show Advanced Settings (if they aren't visible).
- 4 Click Mounts.
- 5 From the Mounts list, select the NFS mount you want to edit.
- 6 Click the Edit (/) button.
- 7 Change the NFS mount settings.

Using Advanced Search Policy Settings

Directory Utility defines the following search policies:

- **Authentication:** Mac OS X uses the authentication search policy to locate and retrieve user authentication information and other administrative data from directory domains.
- **Contacts:** Mac OS X uses the contacts search policy to locate and retrieve name, address, and other contact information from directory domains. Mac OS X Address Book uses this contact information. Other applications can also be programmed to use it.

Each search policy consists of a list of directory domains. The order of directory domains in the list defines the search policy. Starting at the top of the list, Mac OS X searches each listed directory domain until it finds the information it needs or reaches the end of the list without finding the information.

The authentication and contacts search policies can have one of the following settings:

- **Automatic:** Starts with the local directory domain and can include an LDAP directory supplied by DHCP and directory domains that the computer is connected to. This is the default setting for Mac OS X v10.2 or later and offers the most flexibility for mobile computers.
- **Local directory:** Includes only the local directory domain.
- **Custom path:** Starts with the local directory domain and includes your choice of LDAP directories, an Active Directory domain, shared directory domains, BSD configuration files, and an NIS domain.

Important: If you configure Mac OS X to use an automatic authentication search policy and a DHCP-supplied LDAP server, you increase the risk of a malicious user gaining control of your computer. The risk is even higher if your computer is configured to connect to a wireless network. For more information, see “Protecting Computers from a Malicious DHCP Server” on page 131.

For task descriptions and instructions, see:

- “Defining Automatic Search Policies” on page 129
- “Defining Custom Search Policies” on page 130
- “Defining Local Directory Search Policies” on page 131
- “Waiting for a Search Policy Change to Take Effect” on page 131

Defining Automatic Search Policies

Using Directory Utility, you can configure a Mac OS X computer’s authentication and contacts search policies to be defined automatically.

An automatically defined search policy includes the local directory domain. It can also include an LDAP directory server specified by DHCP service as well as shared directory domains the computer is connected to.

This is the default configuration for the authentication and contacts search policies.

Note: Some applications, such as Mac OS X Mail and Address Book, can access LDAP directories directly, without using Open Directory. To set up one of these applications to access LDAP directories directly, open the application and set the correct preference.

Important: If you configure Mac OS X to use an automatic authentication search policy and a DHCP-supplied LDAP server or a DHCP-supplied shared directory domain, you increase the risk of a malicious user gaining control of your computer. The risk is even higher if your computer is configured to connect to a wireless network. For more information, see “Protecting Computers from a Malicious DHCP Server” on page 131.

To have a search policy defined automatically:

- 1 Open Directory Utility, click Search Policy, and choose a search policy:
 - **Authentication:** Shows the search policy used for authentication and most other administrative data.
 - **Contacts:** Shows the search policy used for contact information in applications such as Address Book.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 From the Search pop-up menu, choose Automatic, then click Apply.
- 4 In System Preferences, make sure the computer’s Network preferences are configured to use DHCP or DHCP with a manual IP address.

- 5 To include an LDAP server in the automatic search policy, make sure the use of a DHCP-supplied LDAP directory is enabled in Directory Utility and that the DHCP service is configured to supply the LDAP server's address.

For more information, see “Enabling or Disabling Use of a DHCP-Supplied LDAP Directory” on page 134. For information about configuring the DHCP service of Mac OS X Server, see *Network Services Administration*.

Defining Custom Search Policies

Using Directory Utility, you can configure a Mac OS X computer's authentication and contacts search policies to use a custom list of directory domains.

A custom list starts with the computer's local directory domain and can include Open Directory (and other LDAP directory domains), an Active Directory domain, shared directory domains, BSD configuration files, and an NIS domain.

If a directory domain specified on a computer's custom search policy is not available, a delay occurs when the computer starts up.

To specify a custom list of directory domains for a search policy:

- 1 In Directory Utility, click Search Policy, and choose a search policy.
 - **Authentication:** Shows the search policy used for authentication and most other administrative data.
 - **Contacts:** Shows the search policy used for contact information in applications such as Address Book.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 From the Search pop-up menu, choose “Custom path.”
- 4 Add directory domains as needed by clicking Add, selecting one or more directories, and clicking Add again.
- 5 Change the order of the listed directory domains as needed by dragging them up or down the list.
- 6 Remove listed directory domains that you don't want in the search policy by selecting them and clicking the Delete (–) button.
- 7 Confirm the removal by clicking OK, then click Apply.

To add a directory that isn't listed among the available directories, make sure the computer has been configured to access the directory. For more information, see:

- “Using Advanced Directory Services Settings” on page 132
- “Using Advanced LDAP Service Settings” on page 133
- “Using Advanced Active Directory Service Settings” on page 156
- “Specifying NIS Settings” on page 170

- “Specifying BSD Configuration File Settings” on page 171

Defining Local Directory Search Policies

Using Directory Utility, you can configure a Mac OS X computer’s authentication and contacts search policies to use only the computer’s local directory.

A search policy that uses only the local directory limits the access that a computer has to authentication information and other administrative data.

If you restrict a computer’s authentication search policy to use only the local directory, only users with local accounts can log in.

To have a search policy use only the local directory domain (local directory):

- 1 Open Directory Utility, click Search Policy, and choose a search policy:
 - **Authentication:** Shows the search policy used for authentication and most other administrative data.
 - **Contacts:** Shows the search policy used for contact information in applications such as Address Book.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 From the Search pop-up menu, choose “Local directory,” then click Apply.

Waiting for a Search Policy Change to Take Effect

After changing the search policy in the Authentication pane or the Contacts pane of Directory Utility, wait 10 or 15 seconds for the change to take effect. Attempts to log in using an account from a directory domain that uses the authentication search policy are unsuccessful until changes to it take effect.

Protecting Computers from a Malicious DHCP Server

Apple recommends that you don’t use an automatic authentication search policy with a DHCP-supplied LDAP server or a DHCP-supplied shared directory domain in an environment where security is a major concern.

A malicious hacker with access to your network can use a sham DHCP server and a sham LDAP directory (or shared directory domain) to control your computer by using the root user account.

For a hacker to access your network, the hacker’s sham DHCP server must be part of your local network or subnet. Therefore, if your computers are the only ones on your local network and they get Internet access through Mac OS X Server NAT service or a NAT router, this type of security breach is not possible. However, a wireless local network decreases security because a hacker can join a wireless local network more easily than a wired local network.

You can protect your Mac against malicious attacks from a sham DHCP server by disabling use of a DHCP-supplied LDAP directory and disabling broadcast and DHCP binding for local directory domain (or disabling the local directory domain). For more information, see “Enabling or Disabling Use of a DHCP-Supplied LDAP Directory” on page 134.

If you have a mobile computer that connects to an LDAP server when the computer is connected to a network, and you change the computer’s search policy from automatic to custom (in the Authentication pane of Search Policy in Directory Utility), a startup delay occurs when the computer is not connected to the network.

The delay occurs because the computer can’t connect to a specific directory domain listed in the computer’s custom search policy. No delay is noticeable when waking a computer that’s been disconnected from the network while sleeping.

Using Advanced Directory Services Settings

Directory Utility lists the different kinds of directory services that Mac OS X can access. The list includes directory services, which give Mac OS X access to user information and other administrative data stored in directory domains.

You can enable or disable access to each directory service. If you disable a service in Directory Utility, Mac OS X no longer accesses that directory service.

For task descriptions and instructions, see:

- “Enabling or Disabling Active Directory Service” on page 132
- “Enabling or Disabling LDAP Directory Services” on page 133

Enabling or Disabling Active Directory Service

You can use Directory Utility to enable or disable the use of Active Directory services provided by a Windows server. Active Directory is the directory service of Windows 2000 and later servers.

If you disable Active Directory services and Active Directory domains are part of a custom search policy, they are listed in red in the Authentication or Contacts pane of Search Policy in Directory Utility.

To enable or disable access to Active Directory:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 Next to Active Directory, select or deselect the checkbox and click Apply.

For configuration instructions, see “Using Advanced Active Directory Service Settings” on page 156.

Enabling or Disabling LDAP Directory Services

You can use Directory Utility to enable or disable access to directory services that use LDAP versions 2 and 3. A single Directory Utility plug-in named LDAPv3 provides access to both LDAP versions 2 and 3.

The directory services provided by Mac OS X Server use LDAPv3, as do many other servers. LDAPv3 is an open standard common in mixed networks of Macintosh, UNIX, and Windows systems. Some servers use the older version, LDAPv2, to provide directory service.

If you disable LDAP directory services and LDAP directories are part of a custom search policy, they are listed in red in the Authentication or Contacts pane of Search Policy in Directory Utility.

To enable or disable LDAP directory services:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 Next to LDAPv3, select or deselect the checkbox and click Apply.

For configuration instructions, see “Using Advanced LDAP Service Settings” on page 133.

Using Advanced LDAP Service Settings

You can configure a server with Mac OS X Server or a computer with Mac OS X to access specific LDAP directories, including the LDAP directory of a Mac OS X Server Open Directory master.

For task descriptions and instructions, see:

- “Accessing LDAP Directories in Mail and Address Book” on page 134
- “Enabling or Disabling Use of a DHCP-Supplied LDAP Directory” on page 134
- “Showing or Hiding Configurations for LDAP Servers” on page 135
- “Configuring Access to an LDAP Directory” on page 136
- “Configuring Access to an LDAP Directory Manually” on page 138
- “Changing a Configuration for Accessing an LDAP Directory” on page 140
- “Duplicating a Configuration for Accessing an LDAP Directory” on page 141
- “Deleting a Configuration for Accessing an LDAP Directory” on page 143
- “Changing the Connection Settings for an LDAP Directory” on page 144
- “Changing the Security Policy for an LDAP Connection” on page 145
- “Configuring LDAP Searches and Mappings” on page 146
- “Setting Up Trusted Binding for an LDAP Directory” on page 149

- “Stopping Trusted Binding with an LDAP Directory” on page 150
- “Changing the Open/Close Timeout for an LDAP Connection” on page 150
- “Changing the Query Timeout for an LDAP Connection” on page 151
- “Changing the Rebind-Try Delay Time for an LDAP Connection” on page 151
- “Changing the Idle Timeout for an LDAP Connection” on page 152
- “Forcing Read-Only LDAPv2 Access” on page 152
- “Ignoring LDAP Server Referrals” on page 152
- “Authenticating an LDAP Connection” on page 153
- “Changing the Password Used for Authenticating an LDAP Connection” on page 153
- “Mapping Config Record Attributes for LDAP Directories” on page 154
- “Editing RFC 2307 Mapping to Enable Creating Users” on page 154
- “Preparing a Read-Only LDAP Directory for Mac OS X” on page 155
- “Populating LDAP Directories with Data for Mac OS X” on page 155

Accessing LDAP Directories in Mail and Address Book

You can configure Mac OS X Mail, Address Book, and some similar applications to access specific LDAP directories directly, without using Open Directory.

For more information, open Mail and choose Help > Mail Help or open Address Book and choose Help > Address Book Help; then search for help on LDAP.

Enabling or Disabling Use of a DHCP-Supplied LDAP Directory

Using Directory Utility, you can configure a Mac OS X computer to get the address of an LDAP directory server when the computer starts up.

Mac OS X requests the address of an LDAP directory server from the DHCP service that also supplies the computer’s IP address, router address, and DNS server addresses. Mac OS X adds the LDAP server’s address supplied by DHCP to the computer’s automatic search policy. The DHCP-supplied LDAP server also appears (dimmed) in the list of LDAP configurations.

For more information, see “Defining Automatic Search Policies” on page 129 and “Changing a Configuration for Accessing an LDAP Directory” on page 140.

The computer can’t be configured to use both a trusted LDAP binding and a DHCP-supplied LDAP directory. Trusted LDAP binding is inherently a static binding, but DHCP-supplied LDAP is a dynamic binding.

For more information, see “Setting Up Trusted Binding for an LDAP Directory” on page 149 and “Setting a Binding Policy for an Open Directory Server” on page 184.

Important: If you configure Mac OS X to use an automatic authentication search policy and a DHCP-supplied LDAP server or a DHCP-supplied shared directory domain, you increase the risk of a malicious user gaining control of your computer. The risk is even higher if your computer is configured to connect to a wireless network. For more information, see “Protecting Computers from a Malicious DHCP Server” on page 131.

To enable or disable automatic access to an LDAP server:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select LDAPv3, then click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 From the Location pop-up menu, choose a network location.

The DHCP-supplied LDAP option can be enabled or disabled independently for each network location defined in the Network pane of System Preferences.

- 5 Click “Add DHCP-supplied LDAP servers to automatic search policies” and do one of the following:
 - If you disable this setting, this computer won’t use an LDAP directory server supplied by DHCP. For more information, see “Configuring Access to an LDAP Directory” on page 136.
 - If you enable this setting, configure the server that provides this computer with DHCP service to supply the address of an LDAP directory server. For more information, see the DHCP chapter of *Network Services Administration*.

Showing or Hiding Configurations for LDAP Servers

You can show or hide a list of available configurations for accessing LDAP directories. Each configuration specifies how Open Directory accesses an LDAP directory. When the list is visible, you can change settings for each LDAP configuration that isn’t dimmed.

When an LDAP configuration is dimmed, the configuration is supplied by DHCP, as described in “Enabling or Disabling Use of a DHCP-Supplied LDAP Directory” on page 134.

To show or hide available LDAP directory configurations:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select LDAPv3 and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 Click the Show Options control or the Hide Options control, whichever is present.

Configuring Access to an LDAP Directory

Using Directory Utility, you can specify how Mac OS X accesses an LDAPv3 directory if you know the DNS name or IP address of the LDAP directory server.

If the directory is not hosted by a server that supplies its own mappings (such as Mac OS X Server) you must know the search base and the template for mapping Mac OS X data to the directory's data.

Supported mapping templates are:

- **Open Directory Server**, for a directory that uses the Mac OS X Server schema
- **Active Directory**, for a directory hosted by a Windows 2000, Windows 2003, or later server
- **RFC 2307**, for most directories hosted by UNIX servers

The LDAPv3 plug-in fully supports Open Directory replication and failover. If the Open Directory master becomes unavailable, the plug-in falls back to a nearby replica.

To specify custom mappings for the directory data, follow the instructions in "Configuring Access to an LDAP Directory Manually" on page 138 instead of the instructions here.

Important: If your computer name contains a hyphen, you might not be able to join or bind to a Directory Domain such as LDAP or Active Directory. To establish binding, use a computer name that does not contain a hyphen.

To have Directory Utility help you configure access to an LDAP directory:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select LDAPv3 and click the Edit (/) button.
You can select LDAPv3 in the list of services without selecting the Enable checkbox for LDAPv3.
- 4 Click New and enter the LDAP server's DNS name or IP address.
- 5 Select the options for accessing the directory:
 - Select "Encrypt using SSL" if you want Open Directory to use Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) for connections with the LDAP directory. Before you select this, ask your Open Directory administrator to determine if SSL is needed.
 - Select "Use for authentication" if this directory contains user accounts that someone will use to log in or authenticate to services.
 - Select "Use for contacts" if this directory contains mail addresses and other information you want to use in Address Book.

If Directory Utility can't contact the LDAP server, a message appears and you must configure access manually or cancel the setup process. For more information about manual configuration instructions, see "Configuring Access to an LDAP Directory Manually" on page 138.

If the dialog expands to show mapping options, choose the mapping template from the pop-up menu, enter the search base suffix, and then click Continue.

Typically, the search base suffix is derived from the server's DNS name. For example, the search base suffix could be "dc=ods,dc=example,dc=com" for a server whose DNS name is ods.example.com.

If no available mapping templates apply to the connection you're setting up, click Manual. For more information, see "Configuring Access to an LDAP Directory Manually" on page 138.

- 6 To have Directory Utility get information from the LDAP server, click Continue.
- 7 If the dialog expands to display options for trusted binding, enter the name of the computer and the name and password of a directory administrator (the binding might be optional).

The dialog tells you whether the LDAP directory requires trusted binding or makes it optional. Trusted binding is mutual: each time the computer connects to the LDAP directory, they authenticate each other. If trusted binding is set up or the LDAP directory doesn't support trusted binding, the Bind button does not appear. Make sure you supplied the correct computer name.

If you see an alert saying that a computer record exists, click Cancel to go back and change the computer name, or click Overwrite to replace the existing computer record.

The existing computer record might be abandoned, or it might belong to another computer.

If you replace an existing computer record, notify the LDAP directory administrator in case replacing the record disables another computer. In this case, the LDAP directory administrator must give the disabled computer a different name and add it back to the computer group it belonged to.

For more information about adding a computer to a computer group, see the computer groups chapter of *User Management*.

- 8 If the dialog expands to display connection options, select "Use authentication when selecting" and enter the distinguished name and password of a user account in the directory.

The options for an authenticated connection appear if the LDAP server supports an authenticated connection but not trusted binding. An authentication connection is not mutual: the LDAP server authenticates the client but the client doesn't authenticate the server.

“Use authentication when selecting” is preselected but dimmed if the LDAP server requires you to enter a user account’s distinguished name and password for an authenticated connection.

The distinguished name can specify any user account that has permission to see data in the directory. For example, a user account whose short name is dirauth on an LDAP server whose address is ods.example.com would have the distinguished name uid=dirauth,cn=users,dc=ods,dc=example,dc=com.

Important: If the distinguished name or password are incorrect, you can log in to the computer using user accounts from the LDAP directory.

- 9 Click OK to finish creating the LDAP connection.
- 10 Click OK to finish configuring LDAPv3 options.

If you selected “Use for authentication” or “Use for contacts” in step 5, the LDAP directory configuration you created is added to a custom search policy in the Authentication or Contacts pane of Directory Utility.

Make sure LDAPv3 is enabled in the Services pane so the computer will use the LDAP configuration you created. For more information, see “Enabling or Disabling LDAP Directory Services” on page 133.

Configuring Access to an LDAP Directory Manually

You can manually create a configuration that specifies how Mac OS X accesses an LDAPv3 or LDAPv2 directory. You must know the DNS name or IP address of the LDAP directory server.

If the directory is not hosted by Mac OS X Server, you must know the search base and the template for mapping Mac OS X data to the directory’s data. The supported mapping templates are:

- **From Server**, for a directory that supplies its own mappings and search base, such as Mac OS X Server
- **Open Directory Server**, for a directory that uses the Mac OS X Server schema
- **Active Directory**, for a directory hosted by a Windows 2000, Windows 2003, or later server
- **RFC 2307**, for most directories hosted by UNIX servers
- **Custom**, for directories that don’t use any of the above mappings

The LDAPv3 plug-in fully supports Open Directory replication and failover. If the Open Directory master becomes unavailable, the plug-in falls back to a nearby replica.

Important: If your computer name contains a hyphen, you might not be able to join or bind to a Directory Domain such as LDAP or Active Directory. To establish binding, use a computer name that does not contain a hyphen.

To manually configure access to an LDAP directory:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select LDAPv3 and click the Edit (/) button.

You can select LDAPv3 in the list of services without selecting the Enable checkbox for LDAPv3.
- 4 Click New, then click Manual.
- 5 Enter a name for the configuration.
- 6 Press Tab and enter the DNS name or IP address of the server that hosts the LDAP directory you want to access.
- 7 Next to the DNS name or IP address, click the pop-up menu and choose a mapping template or method:
 - **If you choose From Server**, a search base suffix is not needed. In this case, Open Directory assumes the search base suffix is the first level of the LDAP directory.
 - **If you choose a template**, enter the search base suffix for the LDAP directory and click OK. You must enter a search base suffix or the computer can't find information in the LDAP directory. Typically, the search base suffix is derived from the server's DNS name. For example, the search base suffix could be "dc=ods,dc=example,dc=com" for a server whose DNS name is ods.example.com.
 - **If you choose Custom**, you must set up mappings between Mac OS X record types and attributes and the classes and attributes of the LDAP directory you're connecting to. For more information, see "Configuring LDAP Searches and Mappings" on page 146.
- 8 Before you select the "Encrypt using SSL" checkbox, check with your Open Directory administrator to determine if SSL is needed.
- 9 To change the following settings for this LDAP configuration, click Edit to display the options for the selected LDAP configuration, make changes, and click OK when you finish editing the LDAP configuration options.
 - Click Connection to set timeout options, specify a custom port, ignore server referrals, or force use of the LDAPv2 (read-only) protocol. For more information, see "Changing the Connection Settings for an LDAP Directory" on page 144.
 - Click Search & Mappings to set up searches and mappings for an LDAP server. For more information, see "Setting Up Trusted Binding for an LDAP Directory" on page 149.
 - Click Security to set up an authenticated connection (instead of trusted binding) and other security policy options. For more information, see "Changing the Security Policy for an LDAP Connection" on page 145.

- Click Bind to set up trusted bindings (if the LDAP directory supports it). For more information, see “Setting Up Trusted Binding for an LDAP Directory” on page 149.
- 10 Click OK to finish manually creating the configuration to access an LDAP directory.
- 11 If you want the computer to access the LDAP directory you created a configuration for, add the directory to a custom search policy in the Authentication pane and the Contacts pane of Search Policy in Directory Utility, then make sure LDAPv3 is enabled in the Services pane.

For more information, see “Enabling or Disabling LDAP Directory Services” on page 133 and “Defining Custom Search Policies” on page 130.

Note: Before you can use Workgroup Manager to create users on a non-Apple LDAP server that uses RFC 2307 (UNIX) mappings, you must edit the mapping of the Users record type. For more information, see “Editing RFC 2307 Mapping to Enable Creating Users” on page 154.

Important: If you change your IP address and computer name using `changeip` while you are connected to a directory server you must disconnect and reconnect to the directory server to update the directory with the new computer name and IP address. If you do not disconnect and reconnect to the directory server the directory will not update and will continue to use the old computer name and IP address.

Changing a Configuration for Accessing an LDAP Directory

You can use Directory Utility to change the settings of an LDAP directory configuration. The configuration settings specify how Open Directory accesses an LDAPv3 or LDAPv2 directory.

If the LDAP configuration was provided by DHCP, it can't be changed, so this type of configuration is dimmed in the LDAP configurations list.

To edit a configuration for accessing an LDAP directory:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select LDAPv3 and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 If the list of server configurations is hidden, click Show Options.
- 5 Make changes as needed to the following settings:
 - **Enable:** Click a checkbox to enable or disable access to an LDAP directory server.
 - **Configuration Name:** Double-click a configuration name to edit it.
 - **Server Name or IP Address:** Double-click a server name or IP address to change it.
 - **LDAP Mapping:** From the pop-up menu, choose a template, enter the search base suffix for the LDAP directory, and click OK.

If you chose a template, you must enter a search base suffix or the computer can't find information in the LDAP directory. Typically, the search base suffix is derived from the server's DNS name. For example, for a server whose DNS name is `ods.example.com` the search base suffix is `"dc=ods,dc=example,dc=com."`

If you choose From Server instead of a template, a search base suffix is not needed. In this case, Open Directory assumes the search base suffix is the first level of the LDAP directory.

If you choose Custom, you must set up mappings between the Mac OS X record types and attributes and the classes and attributes of the LDAP directory you're connecting to. For more information, see "Configuring LDAP Searches and Mappings" on page 146.

- **SSL:** Click the checkbox to enable or disable encrypted communications using the SSL protocol. Before you select the SSL checkbox, ask your Open Directory administrator if SSL is needed.
- 6 To change the following default settings for this LDAP configuration, click Edit to display the options for the selected LDAP configuration, make changes, and click OK when you finish editing the LDAP configuration options.
- Click Connection to set timeout options, specify a custom port, ignore server referrals, or force use of the LDAPv2 (read-only) protocol. For more information, see "Changing the Connection Settings for an LDAP Directory" on page 144.
 - Click Search & Mappings to set up searches and mappings for an LDAP server. For more information, see "Setting Up Trusted Binding for an LDAP Directory" on page 149.
 - Click Security to set up an authenticated connection (instead of trusted binding) and other security policy options. For more information, see "Changing the Security Policy for an LDAP Connection" on page 145.
 - Click Bind to set up trusted binding, or click Unbind to stop trusted binding. (You may not see these buttons if the LDAP directory doesn't permit trusted binding.) For more information, see "Setting Up Trusted Binding for an LDAP Directory" on page 149.
- 7 To finish changing the configuration to access an LDAP directory, click OK.

Duplicating a Configuration for Accessing an LDAP Directory

You can use Directory Utility to duplicate a configuration that specifies how Mac OS X accesses an LDAPv3 or LDAPv2 directory. After duplicating an LDAP directory configuration, you can change its settings to make it different from the original configuration.

To duplicate a configuration for accessing an LDAP directory:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.

- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select LDAPv3 and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 If the list of server configurations is hidden, click Show Options.
- 5 In the list, select a server configuration and then click Duplicate.
- 6 Change the duplicate configuration's settings:

- **Enable:** Click a checkbox to enable or disable access to an LDAP directory server.
- **Configuration Name:** Double-click a configuration name to edit it.
- **Server Name or IP Address:** Double-click a server name or IP address to change it.
- **LDAP Mapping:** Choose a template from the pop-up menu, then enter the search base suffix for the LDAP directory and click OK.

If you chose a template, you must enter a search base suffix or the computer can't find information in the LDAP directory. Typically, the search base suffix is derived from the server's DNS name. For example, for a server whose DNS name is `ods.example.com` the search base suffix is `"dc=ods,dc=example,dc=com."`

If you choose From Server instead of a template, a search base suffix is not needed. In this case, Open Directory assumes the search base suffix is the first level of the LDAP directory.

If you choose Custom, you must set up mappings between the Mac OS X record types and attributes and the classes and attributes of the LDAP directory you're connecting to. For more information, see "Configuring LDAP Searches and Mappings" on page 146.

- **SSL:** Click the checkbox to enable or disable encrypted communications using the SSL protocol. Before you select the SSL checkbox, ask your Open Directory administrator if SSL is needed.
- 7 To change the following default settings for the duplicate LDAP configuration, click Edit to display the options, make changes, and click OK when you finish editing them:
 - Click Connection to set up trusted binding (if the LDAP directory supports it), set timeout options, specify a custom port, ignore server referrals, or force use of the LDAPv2 (read-only) protocol. For more instructions, see "Changing the Connection Settings for an LDAP Directory" on page 144.
 - Click Search & Mappings to set up searches and mappings for an LDAP server. For more information, see "Setting Up Trusted Binding for an LDAP Directory" on page 149.
 - Click Security to set up an authenticated connection (instead of trusted binding) and other security policy options. For more information, see "Changing the Security Policy for an LDAP Connection" on page 145.

- Click Bind to set up trusted binding, or click Unbind to stop trusted binding. (You may not see these buttons if the LDAP directory doesn't permit trusted binding.) For more information, see "Setting Up Trusted Binding for an LDAP Directory" on page 149.
- 8 To finish changing the duplicate configuration, click OK.
 - 9 If you want the computer to access the LDAP directory specified by the duplicate configuration you created, add the directory to a custom search policy in the Authentication or Contacts pane of Search Policy in Directory Utility and make sure LDAPv3 is enabled in the Services pane.

For more information, see "Enabling or Disabling LDAP Directory Services" on page 133, and "Defining Custom Search Policies" on page 130.

Deleting a Configuration for Accessing an LDAP Directory

You can use Directory Utility to delete a configuration that specifies how the computer accesses an LDAPv3 or LDAPv2 directory.

If the LDAP configuration was provided by DHCP, it can't be changed, so this configuration option is dimmed in the LDAP configurations list.

To delete a configuration for accessing an LDAP directory:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select LDAPv3 and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 If the list of server configurations is hidden, click Show Options.
- 5 In the list, select a server configuration and click Delete, then click OK.

If you see an alert saying the computer is bound to the LDAP directory and you want to stop trusted binding, click OK and then enter the name and password of an LDAP directory administrator (not a local computer administrator). If you see an alert saying the computer can't contact the LDAP server, you can click OK to forcibly stop trusted binding.

If you forcibly stop trusted binding, this computer still has a computer record in the LDAP directory. Notify the LDAP directory administrator so the administrator knows to remove the computer from the computer group.

For more information about removing a computer from its computer group, see the computer groups chapter of *User Management*.

The deleted configuration is removed from the custom search policies for authentication and contacts.

Changing the Connection Settings for an LDAP Directory

You can use Directory Utility to change the connection settings of a configuration that specifies how the computer accesses an LDAPv3 or LDAPv2 directory.

To change the connection settings for accessing an LDAP directory:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select LDAPv3 and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 If the list of server configurations is hidden, click Show Options.
- 5 In the list, select a server configuration and click Edit.
- 6 Click Connection and change any of the following settings:
 - **Configuration Name:** Identifies this configuration in the list of LDAP directory configurations. (You can also change the name in the list of LDAP directory configurations.)
 - **Server Name or IP Address:** Specifies the server's DNS name or its IP address. (You can also change this in the list of LDAP directory configurations.)
 - **Open/close times out in:** Specifies the maximum length of time a connection attempt can last before the attempt is cancelled.
 - **Query times out in:** Specifies the maximum length of time a query can last before the query is cancelled.
 - **Re-bind attempted in:** Specifies the number of seconds to wait before attempting to reconnect if the LDAP server fails to respond. To prevent continuous reconnection attempts, increase this value.
 - **Connection idles out in:** Specifies the number of minutes to permit an idle or unresponsive connection to remain open.
 - **Encrypt using SSL:** Determines whether to encrypt communications with the LDAP directory by using an SSL connection. (You can also change this setting in the list of LDAP directory configurations.) Before you select the SSL checkbox, ask your Open Directory administrator if SSL is needed.
 - **Use custom port:** Specifies a port number other than the standard port for LDAP connections (389 without SSL, 636 with SSL).
 - **Ignore server referrals:** Determines whether to ignore or follow an LDAP server's referral to look on other LDAP servers or replicas for information. Server referrals can help a computer find information but can also delay logins or cause other delays if the computer must verify referrals to other LDAP servers.
 - **Use LDAPv2 (read only):** Determines whether to use the older LDAPv2 protocol for read-only access to an LDAP directory.

Changing the Security Policy for an LDAP Connection

Using Directory Utility, you can configure a stricter security policy for an LDAPv3 connection than the security policy of the LDAP directory. For example, if the LDAP directory's security policy permits clear-text passwords, you can set an LDAPv3 connection to not permit clear-text passwords.

Setting a stricter security policy protects your computer from a malicious hacker trying to use a rogue LDAP server to gain control of your computer.

The computer must communicate with the LDAP server to show the state of the security options. Therefore when you change security options for an LDAPv3 connection, the computer's authentication search policy should include the LDAPv3 connection.

The permissible settings of an LDAPv3 connection's security options are subject to the LDAP server's security capabilities and requirements. For example, if the LDAP server doesn't support Kerberos authentication, several LDAPv3 connection security options are disabled.

To change an LDAPv3 connection's security options:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Search Policy.
- 2 Click Authentication and make sure the LDAPv3 directory you want is listed in the search policy.

For more information about adding the LDAPv3 directory to the authentication search policy, see "Defining Custom Search Policies" on page 130.
- 3 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 4 Click Services.
- 5 In the list of services, select LDAPv3 and click the Edit (/) button.
- 6 If the list of server configurations is hidden, click Show Options.
- 7 Select the configuration for the directory you want, then click Edit.
- 8 Click Security and then change any of the following settings.

Note: The security settings here and on the corresponding LDAP server are determined when the LDAP connection is set up. The settings aren't updated automatically if the server settings are changed.

If any of the last four options are selected but disabled, the LDAP directory requires them. If any of these options are unselected and disabled, the LDAP server doesn't support them. For more information about setting these options for a Mac OS X Server LDAP directory, see "Setting a Security Policy for an Open Directory Server" on page 184.

- **Use authentication when connecting:** Determines whether the LDAPv3 connection authenticates itself with the LDAP directory by supplying the specified distinguished name and password. This option is not visible if the LDAPv3 connection uses trusted binding with the LDAP directory.
- **Bound to the directory as:** Specifies the credentials the LDAPv3 connection uses for trusted binding with the LDAP directory. This option and the credentials can't be changed here. Instead, you can unbind and then bind again with different credentials.

For more information, see “Stopping Trusted Binding with an LDAP Directory” on page 150 and “Setting Up Trusted Binding for an LDAP Directory” on page 149.

This option is not visible unless the LDAPv3 connection uses trusted binding.

- **Disable clear text passwords:** Determines whether the password is to be sent as clear-text if it can't be validated using an authentication method that sends an encrypted password.
For more information, see “Selecting Authentication Methods for Shadow Password Users” on page 113 and “Selecting Authentication Methods for Open Directory Passwords” on page 114.
- **Digitally sign all packets (requires Kerberos):** Certifies that directory data from the LDAP server hasn't been intercepted and modified by another computer while en route to your computer.
- **Encrypt all packets (requires SSL or Kerberos):** Requires the LDAP server to encrypt directory data using SSL or Kerberos before sending it to your computer. Before you select the “Encrypt all packets (requires SSL or Kerberos)” checkbox, ask your Open Directory administrator if SSL is needed.
- **Block man-in-the-middle attacks (requires Kerberos)** Protects against a rogue server posing as the LDAP server. Best if used with the “Digitally sign all packets” option.

Configuring LDAP Searches and Mappings

Using Directory Utility, you can edit the mappings, search bases, and search scopes that specify how Mac OS X finds specific data items in an LDAP directory. You can edit these settings separately for each LDAP directory configuration listed in Directory Utility. Each LDAP directory configuration specifies how Mac OS X accesses data in an LDAPv3 or LDAPv2 directory.

You can edit the following:

- The mapping of each Mac OS X record type to one or more LDAP object classes
- The mapping of Mac OS X data types, or attributes, to LDAP attributes for each record type
- The LDAP search base and search scope that determine where Mac OS X looks for a Mac OS X record type in an LDAP directory

When mapping Mac OS X user attributes to a read/write LDAP directory domain (an LDAP domain that is not read-only), the LDAP attribute mapped to RealName must not be the same as the first attribute in a list of LDAP attributes mapped to RecordName.

For example, the cn attribute must not be the first attribute mapped to RecordName if cn is also mapped to RealName.

If the LDAP attribute mapped to RealName is the same as the first attribute mapped to RecordName, problems will occur when you try to edit the full (long) name or the first short name in Workgroup Manager.

For more information about Mac OS X record types and attributes, see the Appendix, “Mac OS X Directory Data.”

To edit the search bases and mappings for an LDAP server:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 Click Services.
- 4 In the list of services, select LDAPv3 and click the Edit (/) button.
- 5 If the list of server configurations is hidden, click Show Options.
- 6 In the list, select a server configuration and click Edit.
- 7 Click Search & Mappings.
- 8 Select the mappings you want to use as a starting point; otherwise, choose Custom to begin with no predefined mappings.

If you choose one of the LDAP mapping templates a search base suffix that you can change appears, or you can accept the default search base suffix by clicking OK.

Click the “Access this LDAPv3 server using” pop-up menu and choose a mapping template to use its mappings as a starting point.

- 9 Add record types and change their search bases as needed:
 - To add record types, click Add (below the Record Types and Attributes list); then, in the sheet that appears, select Record Types, select one or more record types from the list, and click OK.
 - To change the search base and search scope of a record type, select it in the Record Types and Attributes list; then, edit the “Search base” field. Select “all subtrees” to set the search scope to include the LDAP directory’s hierarchy from the search base down, or select “first level only” to set the search scope to include only the search base and one level below it in the LDAP directory’s hierarchy.
 - To remove a record type, in the Record Types and Attributes list select the type and click Delete.

- To add a mapping for a record type, select the record type in the Record Types and Attributes list, then click Add (below “Map to ___ items in list”) and enter the name of an object class from the LDAP directory. To add another LDAP object class, press Return and enter the name of the object class and specify whether to use all or any of the listed LDAP object classes by using the pop-up menu above the list.
- To change a mapping for a record type, select the record type in the Record Types and Attributes list, then double-click the LDAP object class you want to change in the “Map to ___ items in list” and edit it. Specify whether to use all or any of the listed LDAP object classes by using the pop-up menu above the list.
- To remove a mapping for a record type, in the Record Types and Attributes list, select the record type, select the LDAP object class you want to remove from the “Map to ___ items in list,” and then click Delete (below “Map to ___ items in list”).

10 Add attributes and change their mappings as needed:

- To add attributes to a record type, in the Record Types and Attributes list, select the record type and click Add (below the Record Types and Attributes list); then, in the sheet that appears, select Attribute Types, select one or more attribute types, and click OK.
- To add a mapping for an attribute, in the Record Types and Attributes list, select the attribute, click Add (below “Map to ___ items in list”), and enter the name of an attribute from the LDAP directory; to add another LDAP attribute, press Return and enter the name of the attribute.
- To change a mapping for an attribute, in the Record Types and Attributes list, select the attribute, double-click the item you want to change in the “Map to ___ items in list,” and then edit the item name.
- To remove a mapping for an attribute, in the Record Types and Attributes list, select the attribute, select the item you want to remove from the “Map to ___ items in list,” and then click Delete (below “Map to ___ items in list”).
- To change the order of attributes appearing in the list on the right, drag the attributes up or down in the list.

11 To save your mappings as a template, click Save Template.

Templates saved in the default location are listed in pop-up menus of LDAP mapping templates the next time you open Directory Utility. The default location for saved templates is in your home folder at this path:

~/Library/Application Support/Directory Utility/LDAPv3/Templates

12 To store the mappings in the LDAP directory so it can supply them automatically to its clients, click Write to Server and then enter a search base to store the mappings, a distinguished name of an administrator or other user with write permission for the search base (for example, uid=diradmin,cn=users,dc=ods,dc=example,dc=com), and a password.

If you are writing mappings to an Open Directory LDAP server, the correct search base is “cn=config, *suffix*” (where *suffix* is the server’s search base suffix, such as “dc=ods,dc=example,dc=com”).

The LDAP directory supplies its mappings to Mac OS X clients whose custom search policy includes a connection that’s configured to get mappings from the LDAP server. The LDAP directory also supplies its mappings to all Mac OS X clients that have an automatic search policy. For more information, see “Configuring Access to an LDAP Directory” on page 136 and “Using Advanced Search Policy Settings” on page 128.

Setting Up Trusted Binding for an LDAP Directory

You can use Directory Utility to set up trusted binding between the computer and an LDAP directory that supports trusted binding. The binding is mutually authenticated by an authenticated computer record that’s created in the directory when you set up trusted binding.

The computer can’t be configured to use trusted LDAP binding and a DHCP-supplied LDAP directory. Trusted LDAP binding is inherently static, but DHCP-supplied LDAP is dynamic.

For more information, see “Enabling or Disabling Use of a DHCP-Supplied LDAP Directory” on page 134 and “Setting a Binding Policy for an Open Directory Server” on page 184.

To set up trusted binding to an LDAP directory:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select LDAPv3 and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 If the list of server configurations is hidden, click Show Options.
- 5 Select the server configuration you want and click Edit.
- 6 Click Bind, then enter the following credentials and click OK.

Enter the name of the computer and the name and password of an LDAP directory domain administrator. The computer name can’t be in use by another computer for trusted binding or other network services.

If the Bind button doesn’t appear, the LDAP directory doesn’t support trusted binding.

- 7 Verify that you supplied the correct computer name.

If you see an alert saying that a computer record exists, click Cancel to go back and change the computer name, or click Overwrite to replace the existing computer record.

The existing computer record might be abandoned, or it might belong to another computer. If you replace an existing computer record, notify the LDAP directory administrator in case replacing the record disables another computer.

In such a situation, the LDAP directory administrator must give the disabled computer another name and add it to the computer group it belonged to, using a different name for that computer.

For more information about adding a computer to a computer group, see the computer groups chapter of *User Management*.

- 8 To finish setting up trusted binding, click OK.

Stopping Trusted Binding with an LDAP Directory

You can use Directory Utility to stop trusted binding between a computer and an LDAP directory that permits but doesn't require trusted binding.

To stop trusted binding with an LDAP directory:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, click it and then enter the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select LDAPv3, then click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 If the list of server configurations is hidden, click Show Options.
- 5 Select the server configuration you want, then click Edit.
- 6 Click Unbind, then enter the following credentials and click OK.

Enter the name and password of an LDAP directory administrator (not a local computer administrator).

If trusted binding hasn't been set up on this computer, the Unbind button does not appear.

If you see an alert saying the computer can't contact the LDAP server, click OK if you want to forcibly stop trusted binding.

If you forcibly stop trusted binding, this computer still has a computer record in the LDAP directory. Notify the LDAP directory administrator so the administrator knows to remove the computer from the computer group.

For more information about removing a computer from its computer group, see the computer groups chapter of *User Management*.

- 7 To finish stopping trusted binding, click OK.

Changing the Open/Close Timeout for an LDAP Connection

Using Directory Utility, you can specify how long Open Directory waits before cancelling an attempt to connect to the LDAP server.

To set the open/close timeout for an LDAP connection:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.

- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select LDAPv3 and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 If the list of server configurations is hidden, click Show Options.
- 5 In the list, select a server configuration and click Edit.
- 6 Click Connection and then enter a value for “Open/close times out in __ seconds.”
The default is 15 seconds.

Changing the Query Timeout for an LDAP Connection

Using Directory Utility, you can specify how long Open Directory waits before cancelling a query sent to the LDAP directory.

To set the query timeout for an LDAP connection:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select LDAPv3 and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 If the list of server configurations is hidden, click Show Options.
- 5 In the list, select a server configuration and click Edit.
- 6 Click Connection and then enter a value for “Query times out in __ seconds.”
The default value is 120 seconds.

Changing the Rebind-Try Delay Time for an LDAP Connection

Using Directory Utility, you can specify how long to wait before attempting to reconnect if an LDAP server fails to respond. You can increase this value to prevent continuous reconnect attempts.

To set the rebind delay for idle LDAP clients:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select LDAPv3 and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 If the list of server configurations is hidden, click Show Options.
- 5 In the list, select a server configuration and click Edit.
- 6 Click Connection and then enter a value for “Rebind attempted in __ seconds.”
The default is 120 seconds.

Changing the Idle Timeout for an LDAP Connection

Using Directory Utility, you can specify how long an LDAP connection remains idle before Open Directory closes the connection. You can adjust this setting to reduce the number of open connections on the LDAP server.

To set a timeout interval for an idle LDAP connection:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select LDAPv3 and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 If the list of server configurations is hidden, click Show Options.
- 5 In the list, select a server configuration and click Edit.
- 6 Click Connection and enter a value for "Connection idles out in __ minutes."
The default is 1 minute.

Forcing Read-Only LDAPv2 Access

Using Directory Utility, you can force a connection to an LDAP server using LDAPv2. This forced LDAPv2 connection is read-only (not read-write) and doesn't use SSL.

To force read-only LDAPv2 access to an LDAP server:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select LDAPv3 and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 If the list of server configurations is hidden, click Show Options.
- 5 In the list, select the server configuration and click Edit.
- 6 Click Connection and then select "Use LDAPv2 (read only)."

Ignoring LDAP Server Referrals

Using Directory Utility, you can specify whether the computer ignores or follows an LDAP server's referral to look on other LDAP servers or replicas for information.

Server referrals can help a computer find information but can also delay logins or cause other delays if the computer must verify referrals to other LDAP servers.

To specify whether to ignore LDAP server referrals:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select LDAPv3 and click the Edit (/) button.

- 4 If the list of server configurations is hidden, click Show Options.
- 5 In the list, select a server configuration and click Edit.
- 6 Click Connection and select "Ignore server referrals."

Authenticating an LDAP Connection

Using Directory Utility, you can set up an authenticated connection to an LDAP directory. This authentication is one-way. The computer proves its identity to an LDAP directory, but the LDAP directory doesn't prove its authenticity to the computer. For mutual authentication, see "Setting Up Trusted Binding for an LDAP Directory" on page 149.

Note: If trusted binding is set up between the computer and the LDAP directory, an authenticated connection would be redundant and you can't set one up.

To set up an authenticated LDAPv3 connection:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select LDAPv3 and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 If the list of server configurations is hidden, click Show Options.
- 5 In the list, select a server configuration and click Edit.
- 6 Click Security.
- 7 Select "Use authentication when connecting," and then enter a user's distinguished name and password.

The distinguished name can specify any user account that has permission to see data in the directory. For example, a user account whose short name is "authenticator" on an LDAP server and whose address is ods.example.com has the distinguished name uid=authenticator,cn=users,dc=ods,dc=example,dc=com.

Important: If the distinguished name or password are incorrect, no one can log in to the computer using user accounts from the LDAP directory.

Changing the Password Used for Authenticating an LDAP Connection

Using Directory Utility, you can update an authenticated LDAP connection to use a password that has been changed on the LDAP server. (All computers having an authenticated connection to an LDAP server must be updated if the password used to authenticate the LDAP connection is changed on the server.)

To change the password for an LDAP connection:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.

- 3 In the list of services, select LDAPv3 and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 If the list of server configurations is hidden, click Show Options.
- 5 In the list, select a server configuration and click Edit.
- 6 Click Security and change the Password setting:
 - If the Password setting is dimmed because “Use authentication when connecting” is not selected, see “Authenticating an LDAP Connection” on page 153.
 - If the Password setting is dimmed because “Bound to the directory as” is selected (but dimmed), the connection isn’t authenticated with a user password. Instead, the connection uses an authenticated computer record for trusted binding.

Mapping Config Record Attributes for LDAP Directories

To store information for managed Mac OS X users in a non-Apple LDAP directory, you must map the following Config record type attributes: RealName and DataStamp.

If you do not map these attributes, the following error message will appear when you use Workgroup Manager to change a user record that resides in the LDAP directory:

The attribute with name “dsRecTypeStandard:Config” is not mapped.

You can ignore this message if you are not using Mac OS X client management, which depends on the Config record type’s RealName and DataStamp attributes for a cache.

Editing RFC 2307 Mapping to Enable Creating Users

Before you can use Workgroup Manager to create users on a non-Apple LDAP directory server that uses RFC 2307 (UNIX) mappings, you must edit the mapping of the Users record type. You do this with Directory Utility.

To enable creating user records in an LDAP directory with RFC 2307 mappings:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select LDAPv3 and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 If the list of server configurations is hidden, click Show Options.
- 5 Select the directory configuration with RFC 2307 mappings, then click Edit.
- 6 Click Search & Mappings.
- 7 In the list on the left, select Users.

By default, “Map to ___ items in list” is set to Any and the list on the right includes posixAccount, inetOrgPerson, and shadowAccount.

- 8 Change “Map to ___ items in list” to All and then change the list on the right to include the set of LDAP object classes you want the Users record type mapped to.

For example, you could delete `shadowAccount` from the list so that Users map to only `posixAccount` and `inetOrgPerson`. Alternatively, you could map Users to `account`, `posixAccount`, and `shadowAccount`.

To change an item on the list, double-click it. To add an item to the list, click Add. To delete the selected item from the list, click Delete. To change the order of listed items, drag items up or down in the list. You can find the object classes of user records in the LDAP directory by using the `ldapsearch` UNIX tool in Terminal. For example, the following code finds object classes for a user record whose `cn` attribute is "Leonardo da Vinci:"

```
$ ldapsearch -x -h ldapserver.example.com -b "dc=example, dc=com"
      'cn=Leonardo da Vinci' objectClass
```

The output displayed for this example would be:

```
# Leonardo da Vinci, example.com
dn: cn=Leonardo da Vinci, dc=example, dc=com
objectClass: inetOrgPerson
objectClass: posixAccount
```

Preparing a Read-Only LDAP Directory for Mac OS X

If you want a Mac OS X computer to get administrative data from a read-only LDAP directory, the data must exist in the format required by Mac OS X. You might need to add, change, or reorganize data in the read-only LDAP directory.

Because Mac OS X cannot write data to a read-only directory, you must use other tools to make the changes. The tools must reside on the server that hosts the read-only LDAP directory.

To prepare a read-only LDAP directory for Mac OS X:

- 1 Go to the server that hosts the read-only LDAP directory and configure it to support LDAP-based authentication and password checking.
- 2 Change the LDAP directory's object classes and attributes as necessary to provide the data needed by Mac OS X.

For specifications of the data required by Mac OS X directory services, see the Appendix, "Mac OS X Directory Data."

Populating LDAP Directories with Data for Mac OS X

After configuring access to LDAP directory domains and setting up data mapping, you can populate them with records and data for Mac OS X. For LDAP directories that permit remote administration (read/write access), you can use the Workgroup Manager application, which is included with Mac OS X Server, as follows:

- Identify share points and shared domains that you want to mount automatically in users' Network browsers (what users see when they click Network in a Finder window sidebar).

Use the Sharing in Server Admin and the Network modules of Workgroup Manager. For more information, see *File Services Administration*.

- Define user and group records and configure their settings.
Use the Accounts module of Workgroup Manager. For more information, see *User Management*.
- Define lists of computers that have the same preference settings and are available to the same users and groups.
Use the Computers module of Workgroup Manager. For more information, see *User Management*.

In all cases, click the small globe icon above the list of users and choose from the pop-up menu in Workgroup Manager to open the LDAP directory domain. If the LDAP directory is not listed in the pop-up menu, choose Other from this menu to select the LDAP directory.

Note: To add records and data to a read-only LDAP directory, you must use tools on the server that host the LDAP directory.

Using Advanced Active Directory Service Settings

You can configure a server with Mac OS X Server or a computer with Mac OS X to access an Active Directory domain on a Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 server.

For task descriptions and instructions, see:

- “About Active Directory Access” on page 157
- “Configuring Access to an Active Directory Domain” on page 159
- “Setting Up Mobile User Accounts in Active Directory” on page 161
- “Setting Up Home Folders for Active Directory User Accounts” on page 162
- “Setting a UNIX Shell for Active Directory User Accounts” on page 163
- “Mapping the UID to an Active Directory Attribute” on page 163
- “Mapping the Primary Group ID to an Active Directory Attribute” on page 164
- “Mapping the Group ID in Group Accounts to an Active Directory Attribute” on page 165
- “Specifying a Preferred Active Directory Server” on page 166
- “Changing the Active Directory Groups That Can Administer the Computer” on page 166
- “Controlling Authentication from All Domains in the Active Directory Forest” on page 167
- “Unbinding from the Active Directory Server” on page 168
- “Editing User Accounts and Other Records in Active Directory” on page 168

Alternative methods for accessing an Active Directory domain are appropriate for some networks. See “Setting Up LDAP Access to Active Directory Domains” on page 169.

About Active Directory Access

You can configure Mac OS X to access basic user account information in an Active Directory domain of a Windows 2000 or later server. This is possible because of an Active Directory plug-in for Directory Utility. This Active Directory plug-in is listed in the Services pane of Directory Utility.

You do not need to make schema changes to the Active Directory domain to get basic user account information. You might change the default Access Control List (ACL) of specific attributes so computer accounts can read user properties.

The Active Directory plug-in generates all attributes required for Mac OS X authentication from standard attributes in Active Directory user accounts. The plug-in also supports Active Directory authentication policies, including password changes, expirations, forced changes, and security options.

Mac OS X v10.5 supports packet encryption and packet signing options for all Windows Active Directory domains. This functionality is on by default as “allow.” You can change the default setting to disabled or required by using the `dsconfigad` command-line tool. The packet encryption and packet signing options ensures all data to and from the Active Directory Domain for record lookups is protected.

The Active Directory plug-in dynamically generates a unique user ID and a primary group ID based on the user account’s Globally Unique ID (GUID) in the Active Directory domain. The generated user ID and primary group ID are the same for each user account, even if the account is used to log in to different Mac OS X computers.

Alternatively, you can force the Active Directory plug-in to map the user ID to Active Directory attributes that you specify.

The Active Directory plug-in generates a group ID based on the Active Directory group account’s GUID. You can also force the plug-in to map the group ID for group accounts to Active Directory attributes that you specify.

When someone logs in to Mac OS X with an Active Directory user account, the Active Directory plug-in can mount the Windows network home folder specified in the Active Directory user account as the user’s Mac OS X home folder. You can specify whether to use the network home specified by Active Directory’s standard home Directory attribute or by Mac OS X’s home Directory attribute (if the Active Directory schema has been extended to include it).

Alternatively, you can configure the plug-in to create a local home folder on the startup volume of the Mac OS X client computer. In this case, the plug-in also mounts the user's Windows network home folder (specified in the Active Directory user account) as a network volume, like a share point. Using the Finder, the user can then copy files between the Windows home folder network volume and the local Mac OS X home folder.

The Active Directory plug-in can also create mobile accounts for users. A mobile account has a local home folder on the startup volume of the Mac OS X client computer. (The user also has a network home folder as specified in the user's Active Directory account).

A mobile account caches the user's Active Directory authentication credentials on the Mac OS X client computer. The cached credentials permit the user to log in using the Active Directory name and password when the client computer is disconnected from the Active Directory server.

A mobile account has a local home folder on the startup volume of the Mac OS X client computer. (The user also has a network home folder as specified in the user's Active Directory account.)

If the Active Directory schema has been extended to include Mac OS X record types (object classes) and attributes, the Active Directory plug-in detects and accesses them.

For example, the Active Directory schema could be changed using Windows administration tools to include Mac OS X managed client attributes. This schema change enables the Active Directory plug-in to support managed client settings made using Mac OS X Server's Workgroup Manager application.

Mac OS X clients assume full read access to attributes that are added to the directory. Therefore, it might be necessary to change the ACL of those attributes to permit computer groups to read these added attributes.

The Active Directory plug-in discovers all domains in an Active Directory forest. You can configure the plug-in to permit users from any domain in the forest to authenticate on a Mac OS X computer. Alternatively, you can permit only specific domains to be authenticated on the client.

The Active Directory plug-in fully supports Active Directory replication and failover. It discovers multiple domain controllers and determines the closest one. If a domain controller becomes unavailable, the plug-in falls back to another nearby domain controller.

The Active Directory plug-in uses LDAP to access Active Directory user accounts and Kerberos to authenticate them. The Active Directory plug-in does not use Microsoft's proprietary Active Directory Services Interface (ADSI) to get directory or authentication services.

Configuring Access to an Active Directory Domain

Using the Active Directory plug-in listed in Directory Utility, you can configure Mac OS X to access basic user account information in an Active Directory domain on a Windows server.

The Active Directory plug-in generates all attributes required for Mac OS X authentication. No changes to the Active Directory schema are required.

The Active Directory plug-in detects and accesses standard Mac OS X record types and attributes (such as the attributes required for Mac OS X client management), if the Active Directory schema has been extended to include them.

WARNING: Advanced options of the Active Directory plug-in can map you to the Mac OS X unique user ID (UID), primary group ID (GID), and group GID attribute to the correct attributes that have been added to the Active Directory schema. If you change the setting of these mapping options later, users might lose access to previously created files.

Important: If your computer name contains a hyphen you may not be able to join or bind to a Directory Domain such as LDAP or Active Directory. To establish binding, use a computer name that does not contain a hyphen.

To configure access to an Active Directory domain:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select Active Directory and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 Enter the DNS name of the Active Directory domain you want to bind to the computer you're configuring.

The administrator of the Active Directory domain can tell you the DNS name to enter.

- 5 If necessary, edit the Computer ID.

The Computer ID is the name by which the computer is known in the Active Directory domain, and it's preset to the name of the computer. You might change this to conform to your organization's established scheme for naming computers in the Active Directory domain. If you're not sure, ask the Active Directory domain administrator.

6 (Optional) Set advanced options.

If the advanced options are hidden, click Show Advanced Options and set options in the User Experience, Mappings, and Administrative panes. You can also change advanced option settings later.

For more information about advanced options, see:

- “Setting Up Mobile User Accounts in Active Directory” on page 161
- “Setting Up Home Folders for Active Directory User Accounts” on page 162
- “Setting a UNIX Shell for Active Directory User Accounts” on page 163
- “Mapping the UID to an Active Directory Attribute” on page 163
- “Mapping the Primary Group ID to an Active Directory Attribute” on page 164
- “Mapping the Group ID in Group Accounts to an Active Directory Attribute” on page 165
- “Specifying a Preferred Active Directory Server” on page 166
- “Changing the Active Directory Groups That Can Administer the Computer” on page 166
- “Controlling Authentication from All Domains in the Active Directory Forest” on page 167

7 Click Bind, use the following to authenticate as a user who has rights to bind a computer to the Active Directory domain, select the search policies you want Active Directory added to (see below), and click OK:

- **Username and Password:** You may be able to authenticate by entering the name and password of your Active Directory user account, or the Active Directory domain administrator might need to provide a name and password.
- **Computer OU:** Enter the organizational unit (OU) for the computer you’re configuring.
- **Use for authentication:** Use to determine whether Active Directory is added to the computer’s authentication search policy.
- **Use for contacts:** Use to determine whether Active Directory is added to the computer’s contacts search policy.

When you click OK, Directory Utility sets up trusted binding between the computer you’re configuring and the Active Directory server. The computer’s search policies are set according to the options you selected when you authenticated, and Active Directory is enabled in Directory Utility’s Services pane.

With the default settings for Active Directory advanced options, the Active Directory forest is added to the computer’s authentication search policy and contacts search policy if you selected “Use for authentication” or “Use for contacts.”

However, if you deselect “Allow authentication from any domain in the forest” in the Administrative advanced options pane before clicking Bind, the nearest Active Directory domain is added instead of the forest.

You can change search policies later by adding or removing the Active Directory forest or individual domains. For more information, see “Defining Custom Search Policies” on page 130.

8 (Optional) Join the server to the Active Directory Kerberos realm.

On the server or an administrator computer that can connect to the server, open Server Admin and select Open Directory for the server. Click Settings, then click General. Click Join Kerberos, then choose the Active Directory Kerberos realm from the pop-up menu and enter credentials for a local administrator on this server.

For more information, see “Joining a Server to a Kerberos Realm” on page 102.

Setting Up Mobile User Accounts in Active Directory

You can enable or disable mobile Active Directory user accounts on a computer that is configured to use Directory Utility’s Active Directory plug-in. Users with mobile accounts can log in using their Active Directory credentials when the computer is not connected to the Active Directory server.

The Active Directory plug-in caches credentials for a user’s mobile account when the user logs in while the computer is connected to the Active Directory domain. This credential caching does not require changing the Active Directory schema.

If the Active Directory schema has been extended to include Mac OS X managed client attributes, those mobile account settings are used instead of the Active Directory plug-in’s mobile account setting.

You can have mobile accounts created automatically or you can require that Active Directory users confirm creation of a mobile account.

To enable or disable mobile accounts in an Active Directory domain:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select Active Directory and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 If the advanced options are hidden, click Show Advanced Options.
- 5 Click User Experience, then click “Create mobile account at login,” and optionally click “Require confirmation before creating a mobile account.”
- 6 If both options are selected, each user decides whether to create a mobile account during login. When a user logs in to Mac OS X using an Active Directory user account, or when logging in as a network user, the user sees a dialog with controls for creating a mobile account immediately. If the first option is selected and the second option is unselected, mobile accounts are created when users log in. If the first option is not selected, the second option is disabled. Click OK.

Setting Up Home Folders for Active Directory User Accounts

On a computer that's configured to use the Directory Utility Active Directory plug-in, you can enable or disable network home folders or local home folders for Active Directory user accounts.

With network home folders, a user's Windows network home folder is mounted as the Mac OS X home folder when the user logs in.

You determine whether the network home folder location is obtained from the Active Directory standard homeDirectory attribute or from the Mac OS X homeDirectory attribute, if the Active Directory schema has been extended to include it.

With local home folders, each Active Directory user who logs in has a home folder on the Mac OS X startup disk. In addition, the user's network home folder is mounted as a network volume, like a share point. The user can copy files between this network volume and the local home folder.

To set up home folders for Active Directory user accounts:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select Active Directory and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 If the advanced options are hidden, click Show Advanced Options.
- 5 Click User Experience.
- 6 If you want Active Directory user accounts to have local home folders in the computer's /Users folder, click "Force local home folder on startup disk."

This option is not available if "Create mobile account at login" is selected.

- 7 To use the Active Directory standard attribute for the home folder location, select "Use UNC path from Active Directory to derive network home location" and then choose from the following protocols for accessing the home folder:
 - To use the standard Windows protocol SMB, choose smb from the "Network protocol to be used" pop-up menu.
 - To use the standard Macintosh protocol AFP, choose afp from the "Network protocol to be used" pop-up menu.

- 8 To use the Mac OS X attribute for the home folder location, deselect "Use UNC path from Active Directory to derive network home location."

To use the Mac OS X attribute, the Active Directory schema must be extended to include it.

- 9 Click OK.

If you change the name of a user account in the Active Directory domain, the server creates a home folder (and subfolders) for the user account the next time it is used for logging in to a Mac OS X computer. The user can still navigate to the old home folder and see its contents in the Finder.

You can prevent creation of a new home folder by renaming the old folder before the user next logs in.

Setting a UNIX Shell for Active Directory User Accounts

On a computer that's configured to use Directory Utility's Active Directory plug-in, you can set the command-line shell that users with Active Directory accounts will use by default when interacting with Mac OS X in the Terminal application.

The default shell is also used for remote interaction through secure shell (SSH) or Telnet. Each user can override the default shell by changing a Terminal preference.

To set a UNIX shell for Active Directory user accounts:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select Active Directory and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 If the advanced options are hidden, click Show Advanced Options.
- 5 Click User Experience.
- 6 Select Default user shell, then enter the default user shell's path.
- 7 Click OK.

Mapping the UID to an Active Directory Attribute

On a computer that's configured to use Directory Utility's Active Directory plug-in, you can specify an Active Directory attribute that you want mapped to Mac OS X's unique user ID (UID) attribute.

Usually, the Active Directory schema must be extended to include an attribute that's suitable for mapping to the UID:

- If the Active Directory administrator extends the Active Directory schema by installing Microsoft's Services for UNIX, you can map the UID to the msSFU-30-Uid-Number attribute.
- If the Active Directory administrator manually extends the Active Directory schema to include RFC 2307 attributes, you can map the UID to uidNumber.
- If the Active Directory administrator manually extends the Active Directory schema to include the Mac OS X UniqueID attribute, you can map the UID to it.

If UID mapping is disabled, the Active Directory plug-in generates a UID based on Active Directory's standard GUID attribute.

WARNING: If you change the mapping of the UID later, users might lose access to previously created files.

To map the UID to an attribute in an extended Active Directory schema:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select Active Directory and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 If the advanced options are hidden, click Show Advanced Options.
- 5 Click Mappings.
- 6 Select "Map UID to attribute" and enter the name of the Active Directory attribute you want mapped to the UID.
- 7 Click OK.

Mapping the Primary Group ID to an Active Directory Attribute

On a computer that's configured to use Directory Utility's Active Directory plug-in, you can specify an Active Directory attribute that you want mapped to Mac OS X's primary group ID (GID) attribute in user accounts.

Usually, the Active Directory schema must be extended to include an attribute that's suitable for mapping to the primary GID:

- If the Active Directory administrator extends the Active Directory schema by installing Microsoft's Services for UNIX, you can map the primary GID to the msSFU-30-Gid-Number attribute.
- If the Active Directory administrator manually extends the Active Directory schema to include RFC 2307 attributes, you can map the primary GID to gidNumber.
- If the Active Directory administrator manually extends the Active Directory schema to include the Mac OS X PrimaryGroupID attribute, you can map the primary GID to it.

If mapping of the primary GID is disabled, the Active Directory plug-in generates a primary GID based on Active Directory's standard GUID attribute.

WARNING: If you change the mapping of the primary GID later, users might lose access to previously created files.

To map the primary GID to an attribute in an extended Active Directory schema:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select Active Directory and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 If the advanced options are hidden, click Show Advanced Options.
- 5 Click Mappings.
- 6 Select “Map user GID to attribute” and enter the name of the Active Directory attribute you want mapped to the primary group ID in user accounts.
- 7 Click OK.

Mapping the Group ID in Group Accounts to an Active Directory Attribute

On a computer that’s configured to use Directory Utility’s Active Directory plug-in, you can specify an Active Directory attribute that you want mapped to Mac OS X’s group ID (GID) attribute in group accounts.

Usually, the Active Directory schema must be extended to include an attribute that’s suitable for mapping to the GID:

- If the Active Directory administrator extends the Active Directory schema by installing Microsoft’s Services for UNIX, you can map the GID to the msSFU-30-Gid-Number attribute.
- If the Active Directory administrator manually extends the Active Directory schema to include RFC 2307 attributes, you can map the GID to gidNumber.
- If the Active Directory administrator manually extends the Active Directory schema to include the Mac OS X gidNumber attribute, you can map the GID to it.

If mapping of the GID is disabled, the Active Directory plug-in generates a GID based on Active Directory’s standard GUID attribute.

WARNING: If you change the mapping of the GID later, users might lose access to previously created files.

To map the GID to an attribute in an extended Active Directory schema:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select Active Directory and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 If the advanced options are hidden, click Show Advanced Options.
- 5 Click Mappings.

- 6 Select “Map group GID to attribute” and enter the name of the Active Directory attribute you want mapped to the GID in group accounts.
- 7 Click Ok.

Specifying a Preferred Active Directory Server

On a computer that’s configured to use Directory Utility’s Active Directory plug-in, you can specify the DNS name of the server whose Active Directory domain you want the computer to access by default.

If the server becomes unavailable in the future, the Active Directory plug-in reverts to another nearby server in the forest.

If this option is deselected, the Active Directory plug-in determines the closest Active Directory domain in the forest.

To specify a preferred server for the Active Directory plug-in to access:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select Active Directory and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 If the advanced options are hidden, click Show Advanced Options.
- 5 Click Administrative.
- 6 Select “Prefer this domain server” and enter the DNS name of the Active Directory server.
- 7 Click OK.

Changing the Active Directory Groups That Can Administer the Computer

On a computer that’s configured to use Directory Utility’s Active Directory plug-in, you can identify Active Directory group accounts whose members you want to have administrator privileges for the computer.

Users that are members of these Active Directory group accounts can perform administrative tasks such as installing software on the Mac OS X computer that you are configuring.

To add or remove Active Directory group accounts whose members have administrator privileges:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select Active Directory and click the Edit (/) button.

- 4 If the advanced options are hidden, click Show Advanced Options.
- 5 Click Administrative
- 6 Select “Allow administration by” and change the list of Active Directory group accounts whose members you want to have administrator privileges:
 - Add a group by clicking the Add (+) button and entering the Active Directory domain name, a backslash, and the group account name (for example, ADS\Domain Admins, IL2\Domain Admins).
 - Delete a group by selecting it in the list and then clicking the Delete (–) button.
- 7 Click OK.

Controlling Authentication from All Domains in the Active Directory Forest

On a computer that’s configured to use Directory Utility’s Active Directory plug-in, you can permit users in the Active Directory forest to authenticate from all domains, or you can restrict authentication to users from individual domains.

To control whether users can authenticate from all domains in the forest:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select Active Directory and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 If the advanced options are hidden, click Show Advanced Options.
- 5 Click Administrative.
- 6 Select “Allow authentication from any domain in the forest.”

If you select “Allow authentication from any domain in the forest,” you can add the Active Directory forest to the computer’s custom search policies for authentication and contacts. When you add an Active Directory forest to a custom search policy, the forest appears in the list of available directory domains as “/Active Directory/All Domains.” (This is the default setting.)

If you deselect “Allow authentication from any domain in the forest,” you can add Active Directory domains individually to the computer’s custom search policies for authentication and contacts. When you add Active Directory domains to a custom search policy, each Active Directory domain appears separately in the list of available directory domains.
- 7 Click OK.

- 8 After selecting “Allow authentication from any domain in the forest,” change the custom search policy in the Authentication pane and Contacts pane to include the Active Directory forest or selected domains.

For more information about changing a custom search policy, see “Defining Custom Search Policies” on page 130.

Unbinding from the Active Directory Server

If the computer is using Directory Utility’s Active Directory plug-in to bind to an Active Directory server, you can unbind the computer from the Active Directory server.

You can forcibly unbind if the computer can’t contact the server or if the computer record has been removed from the server.

To unbind the computer from the Active Directory server:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select Active Directory and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 Click Unbind, authenticate as a user who has rights to terminate a connection to the Active Directory domain, and click OK.

If you see an alert saying the credentials weren’t accepted or the computer can’t contact Active Directory, click Force Unbind to forcibly break the connection.

If you forcibly unbind, Active Directory still contains a computer record for this computer. Notify the Active Directory administrator so the administrator knows to remove the computer record.

- 5 In the Services pane, deselect Active Directory’s Enable setting, then click Apply.

Editing User Accounts and Other Records in Active Directory

You can use Workgroup Manager to make changes to user accounts, group accounts, computer groups, and other records in an Active Directory domain. You can also use Workgroup Manager to delete records in an Active Directory domain.

If the Active Directory schema has been extended to include standard Mac OS X record types (object classes) and attributes, you can use Workgroup Manager to create and edit computer groups in the Active Directory domain.

For more information about working with user accounts, group accounts, and computer groups, see *User Management*.

To create user or group accounts in an Active Directory domain, use the Microsoft Active Directory administration tools on a Windows server administration computer.

Setting Up LDAP Access to Active Directory Domains

Using Directory Utility, you can set up an LDAPv3 configuration to access an Active Directory domain on a Windows server. An LDAPv3 configuration gives you full control over mapping Mac OS X record types and attributes to Active Directory object classes, search bases, and attributes.

Mapping some important Mac OS X record types and attributes, such as the unique user ID (UID), requires extending the Active Directory schema.

An LDAPv3 configuration does not include the following features of the Active Directory plug-in listed in Directory Utility:

- Dynamic generation of unique user ID and primary group ID
- Creation of a local Mac OS X home folder
- Automatic mounting of the Windows home folder
- Mobile user accounts with cached authentication credentials
- Discovery of all domains in an Active Directory forest
- Support for Active Directory replication and failover

For more information, see “About Active Directory Access” on page 157.

To create an Active Directory server configuration:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select LDAPv3 and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 Click New and enter the Active Directory server’s DNS name or IP address.
- 5 Select from the following options for accessing the directory, then click Continue to have Directory Utility get information from the Active Directory server.
 - Select “Encrypt using SSL” if you want Open Directory to use SSL for connections with the Active Directory server. Before you select the SSL checkbox, ask your Open Directory administrator if SSL is needed.
 - Select “Use for authentication” if this directory contains users accounts that someone will use for logging in or authenticating to services.
 - Select “Use for contacts” if this directory contains mail addresses and other information you want to use in Address Book.

If Directory Utility can’t contact the Active Directory server, a message appears and you must configure access manually or cancel the setup process. For more information, see “Configuring Access to an LDAP Directory Manually” on page 138.

If you selected “Use for authentication” or “Use for contacts,” the LDAPv3 connection to the Active Directory domain is added to a custom search policy in the Authentication or Contacts pane of Directory Utility.

Make sure LDAPv3 is enabled in the Services pane so the computer will use the connection you set up. For more information, see “Enabling or Disabling LDAP Directory Services” on page 133.

- 6 When the dialog expands to display mappings options, choose Active Directory from the pop-up menu, enter the search base, then click Continue.

The Active Directory mapping template for an LDAPv3 configuration maps some Mac OS X record types and attributes to object classes and attributes that are not part of a standard Active Directory schema. You can change the mappings defined by the template, or you can extend the Active Directory schema.

Alternatively, you may be able to access your Active Directory domain through the Active Directory plug-in instead of LDAPv3. For more information, see “Configuring Access to an Active Directory Domain.”

- 7 When the dialog expands to display connection options, enter the distinguished name and password of an Active Directory user account.
- 8 Click OK to finish creating the LDAP connection.
- 9 Click OK to finish configuring LDAPv3 options.

Specifying NIS Settings

Using Directory Utility, you can create a configuration that specifies how Mac OS X accesses a Network Information Service (NIS) domain.

To create a configuration for accessing an NIS domain:

- 1 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 2 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 3 In the list of services, select “BSD Flat File and NIS” and click the Edit (/) button.
- 4 Enter the NIS domain name or the DNS name or the IP address of the server where the NIS domain resides.

Include the NIS server’s hostname or IP address if it is required for security or if the server is not on the same subnet as the computer you’re configuring.

If you don’t specify a server, NIS uses a broadcast protocol to discover an NIS server on the subnet.

- 5 Select “Use NIS domain for authentication,” then click OK.

The NIS domain is added to the computer’s authentication search policy as `/BSD/domain`, where *domain* is the name you entered in step 4.

Specifying BSD Configuration File Settings

Historically, UNIX computers have stored administrative data in configuration files such as `/etc/master.passwd`, `/etc/group`, and `/etc/hosts`. Mac OS X is based on a BSD version of UNIX, but normally gets administrative data from directory systems.

Mac OS X Server supports a fixed set of BSD configuration files. You can't specify which configuration files to use, nor can you map their contents to Mac OS X record types and attributes.

In Mac OS X v10.2 or later (including Mac OS X Server v10.2 or later), Open Directory can retrieve administrative data from BSD configuration files. This capability enables organizations that have BSD configuration files to use copies of the existing files on Mac OS X computers. BSD configuration files can be used alone or with other directory domains.

To use BSD configuration files:

- 1 Make sure the BSD configuration files contain the data required by Mac OS X directory services.

For more information, see “Setting Up Data in BSD Configuration Files” on page 171.

- 2 Open Directory Utility and click Services.
- 3 If the lock icon is locked, unlock it by clicking it and entering the name and password of an administrator.
- 4 In the list of services, select “BSD Flat File and NIS” and click the Edit (/) button.
- 5 Select “Use User and Group records in BSD local node,” then click OK.

The BSD configuration files domain is added to the computer's authentication search policy as `/BSD/local`.

Setting Up Data in BSD Configuration Files

If you want a Mac OS X computer to get administrative data from BSD configuration files, the data must exist in the files and must be in the format required by Mac OS X.

You might need to add, change, or reorganize data in the files. Workgroup Manager cannot make changes to data in BSD configuration files, so you must make the necessary modifications by using a text editor or other tools.

The following table lists the names of the files and describes the content in them.

BSD configuration file	Contains
/etc/master.passwd	User names, passwords, IDs, primary group IDs, and so forth
/etc/group	Group names, IDs, and members
/etc/fstab	NFS mounts
/etc/hosts	Computer names and addresses
/etc/networks	Network names and addresses
/etc/services	Service names, ports, and protocols
/etc/protocols	IP protocol names and numbers
/etc/rpcs	Open Network Computing RPC servers
/etc/printcap	Printer names and capabilities
/etc/bootparams	Bootparam settings
/etc/bootp	Bootp settings
/etc/aliases	Mail aliases and distribution lists
/etc/netgroup	Network-wide group names and members

For more information about the data required by Mac OS X directory services, see the Appendix, “Mac OS X Directory Data.”

You can monitor Open Directory services, view and edit raw data from Open Directory domains, and back up Open Directory files.

Ongoing tasks in managing Open Directory services include the following:

- “Controlling Access to Open Directory Servers and Services” on page 173
- “Monitoring Open Directory” on page 177
- “Viewing and Editing Directory Data” on page 179
- “Importing Records of Any Type” on page 183
- “Setting Options for an Open Directory Server” on page 183
- “Managing Open Directory Replication” on page 189
- “Archiving an Open Directory Master” on page 194
- “Restoring an Open Directory Master” on page 195

For information about solving Open Directory problems, see “Solving Open Directory Problems” on page 199.

Controlling Access to Open Directory Servers and Services

You can control access to an Open Directory master or replica by restricting who can log in using the login window or the `ssh` command-line tool. For more information, see:

- “Controlling Access to a Server’s Login Window” on page 174
- “Controlling Access to SSH Service” on page 174
- “Configuring Service Access Control” on page 175
- “Configuring Record Privileges” on page 176

Controlling Access to a Server's Login Window

You can use Server Admin to control which users can log in to Mac OS X Server using the login window. Users with server administrator privileges can always log in to the server.

To control who can use the login window on a server:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the server.
- 2 Click Setting, then click Access.
- 3 Click Services.
- 4 Select “For selected services below” and select Login Window in the list on the left.
- 5 Select “Allow only users and groups below” and edit the list of users and groups that you want to log in using the server’s login window:
 - Add users or groups that can use the login window by clicking the Add (+) button and supplying the requested information.
 - Remove users or groups from the list by selecting one or more and clicking the Remove (–) button.
- 6 Click Save.

If “Allow all users and groups” is selected when you select “For selected services below” in step 4, all services except login window will permit access to all users and groups.

If you want to restrict who can access a listed service in addition to login window, select the service in the list, select “Allow only users and groups below,” and add users and groups to the list.

If you want all users to log in using the server’s login window, select Login Window, then select “Allow all users and groups.”

Controlling Access to SSH Service

You can use Server Admin to control which users can open a command-line connection to Mac OS X Server using the `ssh` command in Terminal. Users with server administrator privileges can always open a connection using `ssh`.

The `ssh` command uses the secure shell (SSH) service. For information about using the `ssh` command, see *Command-Line Administration*.

To control who can open an SSH connection to a remote server:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the server.
- 2 Click Setting, then click Access.
- 3 Click Services.
- 4 Select “For selected services below” and select SSH in the list on the left.

- 5 Select “Allow only users and groups below” and edit the list of users and groups that you want to have SSH access to the server:
 - Add users or groups that can open SSH connections by clicking the Add (+) button and supplying the requested information.
 - Remove users or groups from the list by selecting one or more and clicking the Remove (–) button.
- 6 Click Save.

If “Allow all users and groups” is selected when you select “For selected services below” in step 4, all services except SSH will permit access to all users and groups.

If you want to restrict who can access a listed service besides SSH, select the service in the list, select “Allow only users and groups below,” and add user and groups to the list.

If you want all users to be able to open an SSH connection to the server, select SSH, then select “Allow all users and groups.”

Configuring Service Access Control

You can configure service access control lists (SACLs) using Server Admin. SACLs enable you to specify which administrators have access to Open Directory.

SACLs provide you with greater control over which administrators have access to monitor and manage the service. Only users and groups listed in an SACL have access to the corresponding service. For example, if you want to give administrator access to users or groups for the Open Directory service on your server, add them to the Open Directory SACL.

To set administrator SACL permissions for Open Directory service:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the server.
- 2 Click Settings, then click Access.
- 3 Click Administrators.
- 4 Select the level of restriction that you want for the services.

To restrict access to all services, select “For all services.”

To set access permissions for individual services, select “For selected services below” and then select Open Directory from the Service list.
- 5 Click the Add (+) button to open the Users and Groups drawer.
- 6 Drag users and groups from the Users and Groups drawer to the list.
- 7 Set the users permission.

To grant administrator access, choose Administrator from the Permission pop-up menu next to the user name.

To grant monitoring access, choose Monitor from the Permission pop-up menu next to the user name.

- 8 Click Save.

Configuring Record Privileges

You can configure record privileges using Server Admin. These privileges enable you to specify which users or groups can administer record types and attributes in the directory domain database.

To configure privileges for record types and attributes:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the server.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 4 Click Settings, then click Privileges.
- 5 Select the records types and attributes from the Record list that you want users or groups to administer.

Administer means that the user can modify the characteristics of an existing record.

To permit selected users to administer all records, select "For all records."

To permit selected users to administer specific records, select "For selected records below" and then select the records you want your users to administer.

- 6 Click the Add (+) button to open the Users and Groups drawer.
- 7 Drag users and groups from the Users and Groups drawer to the list.
The users you add to the list will have privileges to administer that record.
- 8 Select the records types and attributes from the Record list that you want users or groups to create.

Create means that the user can create that type of record (for example, creating a conference room).

To permit selected users to create all records, select "For all records."

To permit selected users to create specific records, select "For selected records below" and then select the records you want your users to create.

- 9 Click the Add (+) button to open the Users and Groups drawer.
- 10 Drag users and groups from the Users and Groups drawer to the list.
The users you add to the list will have privileges to create that record.
- 11 Click Save.

Monitoring Open Directory

You can view Open Directory status and logs, and you can inspect Open Directory authentication logs for suspicious activities.

For task instructions, see:

- “Checking the Status of an Open Directory Server” on page 177
- “Monitoring Replicas and Replays of an Open Directory Master” on page 177
- “Viewing Open Directory Status and Logs” on page 178
- “Monitoring Open Directory Authentication” on page 178

Checking the Status of an Open Directory Server

Using Server Admin, you can confirm that the Open Directory master is functioning properly.

To check the status of an open Directory server:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the server.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 4 Click Overview.
- 5 Make sure the status of all items listed in the Open Directory overview pane is “Running.”

If any item is stopped, click Refresh (or choose View > Refresh). If Kerberos remains stopped, see “If Kerberos Is Stopped on an Open Directory Master or Replica” on page 199.

Monitoring Replicas and Replays of an Open Directory Master

Using Server Admin, you can check the status of replica creation and of ongoing replication.

To monitor replicas or relays of an Open Directory master:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the server.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 4 Click Settings, then click General, to see a list of replicas and the status of each one.
The status for a new replica indicates whether it was created successfully. Thereafter, the status indicates whether the most recent replication attempt was successful.

Viewing Open Directory Status and Logs

You can use Server Admin to view status information and logs for Open Directory services. The following logs are available:

- Directory services server log
- Directory services error log
- `kadmin` log
- `kdc` log
- LDAP log
- Password service server log
- Password service error log
- Password service replication log
- `slapconfig` log

To see directory services status or logs:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the server.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 4 Click Overview to see status information.
- 5 Click Logs and use the View pop-up menu to choose the log you want to see.
The path to the log file is displayed above the log.
- 6 Optionally, enter text in the filter field and press Return to show only lines containing the text you entered.

Monitoring Open Directory Authentication

You can use password service logs, visible using Server Admin, to monitor failed login attempts for suspicious activity.

Open Directory uses logs to record failed authentication attempts, including IP addresses that generate them. Periodically review the logs to determine whether there are a large number of failed trials for the same password ID, indicating that somebody might be generating login guesses.

To see Open Directory authentication logs:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the server.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.

- 4 Click Logs and choose the `kdc` log or a password service log from the View pop-up menu.

Viewing and Editing Directory Data

You can view or edit raw directory data by using the Inspector in Workgroup Manager. When using the Inspector you can see directory data that is not otherwise visible in Workgroup Manager.

The Inspector can edit directory data that you cannot otherwise change in Workgroup Manager. For example, you can use the Inspector to change a user's first short name.

For more information, see:

- “Showing the Directory Inspector” on page 179
- “Hiding the Directory Inspector” on page 180
- “Setting Directory Access Controls (DACs)” on page 180
- “Deleting Records” on page 180
- “Deleting Users or Computers Using Inspector or the Command Line” on page 181
- “Changing a User's Short Name” on page 182

Showing the Directory Inspector

You can make the Inspector visible in Workgroup Manager by selecting an option in Workgroup Manager Preferences. Then you can use the Inspector to view or edit raw directory data.

WARNING: Changing raw data in a directory can have unexpected and undesirable consequences. You could inadvertently incapacitate users or computers, or you could unintentionally authorize users to access more resources.

To make the Inspector visible:

- 1 Open Workgroup Manager.
- 2 Choose Workgroup Manager > Preferences.
- 3 Select “Show ‘All Records’ tab and inspector” and click OK.
- 4 To see user, group, computer, or computer group attributes, click the Users, Group, Computer, or Computer Group button, then click Inspector (on the right).
- 5 To see other types of records, click the All Records button next to the Computer Group button, and choose a record type from the pop-up menu at the top of the list.

The pop-up menu lists all standard record types that exist in the directory domain. You can also choose Native from the pop-up menu and enter the name of a native record in the box that appears below the pop-up menu. The list displays all records, including predefined records, of the record type.

Hiding the Directory Inspector

If the Inspector is visible in Workgroup Manager, you can hide it by changing an option in Workgroup Manager Preferences.

To hide the Inspector:

- 1 Open Workgroup Manager.
- 2 Choose Workgroup Manager > Preferences.
- 3 Deselect “Show ‘All Records’ tab and inspector” and click OK.

Setting Directory Access Controls (DACs)

Open Directory provides the ability to define directory access controls (DACs) to all parts of the LDAP directory, providing control of who has permission to change what. Open Directory stores DACs in an apple-acl record that you can edit using the Inspector in Workgroup Manager.

To change DACs:

- 1 Open Workgroup Manager and make the Inspector visible if it is hidden.
For more information, see “Showing the Directory Inspector” on page 179.
- 2 Open the directory domain whose access controls you want to set, and authenticate as an administrator of the domain.
To open a directory domain, click the small globe icon above the list of users and choose from the pop-up menu.
- 3 Click the All Records button (next to the Computer Group button) and then from the pop-up menu at the top of the list choose AccessControls.
- 4 In the list of records, select “default.”
- 5 In the list of attributes, select Locate AccessControlEntry and if a triangle appears next to AccessControlEntry, click the triangle to see all access control entries.
- 6 Select an AccessControlEntry, then click Edit to change the value or click New Value to add an AccessControlEntry value.
You can also double-click a value to edit it in place.
- 7 Click Save.

Deleting Records

You can use the Inspector in Workgroup Manager to delete a record.

WARNING: After using the Inspector to delete user or computer records, use command-line tools to delete the corresponding Kerberos identity and Password Server slot. If you leave an orphaned Kerberos identity or Password Server slot, it can conflict with a user or computer record created later.

WARNING: Deleting records can cause the server to behave erratically or stop working. Don't delete records unless you know they're not needed for proper server functioning.

To delete records with the Inspector:

- 1 Open Workgroup Manager and make the Inspector visible if it is hidden.
For more information, see “Showing the Directory Inspector” on page 179.
- 2 Open the directory domain where you want to delete a record, and authenticate as an administrator of the domain.
To open a directory domain, click the small globe icon above the list of users and choose from the pop-up menu.
- 3 Click the All Records button (next to the Computer Group button) and then from the pop-up menu at the top of the list choose a record type.
- 4 In the list of records, select one or more records you want to delete.
- 5 Click Delete (or choose Server > Delete Selected Records).

Deleting Users or Computers Using Inspector or the Command Line

If you use the Inspector in Workgroup Manager or command-line tools in Terminal to delete a user or computer record whose AuthenticationAuthority attribute includes a Password Server or Kerberos value, delete the corresponding Kerberos identity and Password Server slot.

If you leave an orphaned Kerberos identity in the Kerberos KDC or an orphaned Password Server slot, it can conflict with a user or computer record created later.

If the AuthenticationAuthority attribute includes a value beginning with `;Kerberosv5;` use the `delete_principal` command of the `kadmin.local` command-line tool in Terminal to delete the corresponding Kerberos identity from the Kerberos KDC. For more information, see the `kadmin.local` man page.

If the AuthenticationAuthority attribute includes a value beginning with `;ApplePasswordServer;` use the `-deleteslot` command of the `mkpassdb` command-line tool in Terminal to delete the corresponding Password Server slot. For more information, see the `mkpassdb` man page.

If you delete a user account in Workgroup Manager by clicking the User button (not the All Records button) on the left, selecting the user account, and clicking Delete in the Workgroup Manager toolbar (or by choosing Server > Delete Selected User), Workgroup Manager removes the user account's Password Server slot and Kerberos identity for you.

Likewise, if you delete a computer record by selecting it in a computer group and clicking the Delete (–) button, Workgroup Manager removes the computer record's Password Server slot and Kerberos identity for you.

Changing a User's Short Name

To change a user's first short name, you can use the `ldapmodrdn` command-line tool in Terminal. Any short name except the first name can be changed in the Basic pane of a Workgroup Manager user window.

WARNING: Changing a user's first short name can have unexpected and undesirable consequences. Other services use each user's first short name as a unique and persistent identifier.

For example, changing a user's first short name does not rename the user's home folder. The user has the same home folder (even though its name doesn't match the user's new first short name) unless the user accesses his or her home folder through a group membership.

The following example shows how to change the short name of a user account using `ldapmodrdn`:

```
$ ldapmodrdn -U diradmin -Y "cram-md5" -W -r  
"uid=oldshortname,cn=users,dc=example,dc=com" "uid=newshortname"
```

This example assumes you're using Terminal on the Open Directory master server or you've set up an SSH connection to the Open Directory master server using Terminal on another computer.

In the example, you replace `diradmin` with the name of a directory administrator, `oldshortname` with the short name that you want changed, and `newshortname` with the new short name.

You must also replace `dc=example,dc=com` with the server's search base suffix. You can determine the server's search base suffix by looking at the Protocols settings pane of the Open Directory service in Server Admin.

If you use `ldapmodrdn` to change the first short name of a user record with multiple short names, the record's second short name becomes the first short name and the new short name becomes the record's last short name.

To reorder short names, use the `ldapmodify` command-line tool. For more information, see the `ldapmodify` man page.

Importing Records of Any Type

Workgroup Manager can import all types of records into the LDAP directory of an Open Directory master. This includes users, groups, computer groups, computers, and all other standard Mac OS X record types.

Important: If you import user or group records from a file exported by Mac OS X Server v10.3 or earlier, each imported record is assigned a globally unique ID (GUID).

To make sure that GUIDs and their relationships to specific users and groups remain the same (if you need to reimport the same users and groups), create an export file using Workgroup Manager in Mac OS X Server v10.5. Use the v10.5 export file instead of the export file created using the earlier server version.

For a list of record types and attributes that can be imported, see the following file:

`/System/Library/Frameworks/DirectoryService.framework/Headers/DirServicesConst.h`

For information about well-known record types and attributes, see “Standard Open Directory Record Types and Attributes” on page 253.

For more information about exporting users and groups using Workgroup Manager and on importing records of any type, see *User Management*.

Setting Options for an Open Directory Server

You can set binding, security, and password policies for an Open Directory master and its replicas. You can also set several LDAP options for an Open Directory master or replica. For more information, see the following:

- “Setting a Binding Policy for an Open Directory Server” on page 184
- “Setting a Security Policy for an Open Directory Server” on page 184
- “Changing the Global Password Policy” on page 111
- “Changing the Location of an LDAP Database” on page 186
- “Limiting Search Results for LDAP Service” on page 186
- “Setting the Search Timeout Interval for LDAP Service” on page 187
- “Setting up SSL for LDAP Service” on page 187
- “Creating a Custom SSL Configuration for LDAP” on page 188

Setting a Binding Policy for an Open Directory Server

Using Server Admin, you can configure an Open Directory master to permit or require trusted binding between the LDAP directory and the computers that access it. Replicas of an Open Directory master automatically inherit the master's binding policy.

Trusted LDAP binding is mutually authenticated. The computer proves its identity by using an LDAP directory administrator's name and password to authenticate to the LDAP directory. The LDAP directory proves its authenticity by means of an authenticated computer record created in the directory when you set up trusted binding.

Clients can't be configured to use both trusted LDAP binding and a DHCP-supplied LDAP server (also known as DHCP option 95). Trusted LDAP binding is inherently a static binding, but DHCP-supplied LDAP is a dynamic binding. For more information, see "Enabling or Disabling Use of a DHCP-Supplied LDAP Directory" on page 134.

Note: To use trusted LDAP binding, clients need v10.4 or later of Mac OS X or Mac OS X Server. Clients using v10.3 or earlier can't set up trusted binding.

To set the binding policy for an Open Directory master:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the Open Directory master server.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 4 Click Settings, then click Policy.
- 5 Click Binding, then set the directory binding options you want:
 - To *permit* trusted binding, select "Enable authenticated directory binding."
 - To *require* trusted binding, also select "Require authenticated binding between directory and clients."
- 6 Click Save.

Important: If you enable "Encrypt all packets (requires SSL or Kerberos)" and "Enable authenticated directory binding," make sure that your users are using one or the other for binding and not both.

Setting a Security Policy for an Open Directory Server

Using Server Admin, you can configure a security policy for access to the LDAP directory of an Open Directory master.

Replicas of the Open Directory master automatically inherit the master's security policy.

Note: If you change the security policy for the LDAP directory of an Open Directory master, you must disconnect and reconnect (unbind and rebind) every computer connected (bound) to this LDAP directory. Use the Directory Utility as described in “Removing a Directory Server Connection” on page 122 and “Adding an Open Directory Server Connection” on page 121.

To set the security policy for an Open Directory master:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the Open Directory master server.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 4 Click Settings, then click Policy.
- 5 Click Binding, then set the security options you want:
 - **“Disable clear text passwords”** determines whether clients can send passwords as clear text if the passwords can’t be validated using any authentication method that sends an encrypted password. For more information, see “Selecting Authentication Methods for Shadow Password Users” on page 113 and “Selecting Authentication Methods for Open Directory Passwords” on page 114.
 - **“Digitally sign all packets (requires Kerberos)”** certifies that directory data from the LDAP server won’t be intercepted and modified by another computer while en route to client computers.
 - **“Encrypt all packets (requires SSL or Kerberos)”** requires the LDAP server to encrypt directory data using SSL or Kerberos before sending it to client computers.
 - **“Block man-in-the-middle attacks (requires Kerberos)”** protects against a rogue server posing as the LDAP server. Best if used with the “Digitally sign all packets” option.
 - **“Disable client-side caching”** prevents client computers from caching LDAP data locally.
 - **“Allow users to edit their own contact information”** permits users to change contact information on the LDAP server.
- 6 Click Save.

Important: If you enable “Encrypt all packets (requires SSL or Kerberos)” and “Enable authenticated directory binding,” make sure that your users are using one or the other for binding and not both.

Based on the settings here, the security options can also be configured on each client of an Open Directory master or replica. If an option is selected here, it can’t be deselected for a client. For more information about configuring these options on a client, see “Changing the Security Policy for an LDAP Connection” on page 145.

Changing the Location of an LDAP Database

Using Server Admin, you can specify the disk location of the database that stores user records and other information in an LDAP directory domain of an Open Directory master or replica. The LDAP database is usually on the startup volume but can be on a different local volume.

Note: For security purposes, databases that store authentication information for Open Directory and Kerberos are always on the startup volume regardless of the LDAP database location.

To change the location of an LDAP database:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the Open Directory master or an Open Directory replica server.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 4 Click Settings, then click LDAP.
- 5 From the Configure pop-up menu, choose LDAP Settings, then specify the folder path where you want the LDAP database to be located.

You can enter a folder path in the Database field or you can select a folder location by clicking Choose and browsing to a location you want the folder located.

- 6 Click Save.

Limiting Search Results for LDAP Service

Using Server Admin, you can prevent one type of denial-of-service attack on Mac OS X Server by limiting the number of search results returned by the server's shared LDAP directory domain. Limiting the number of search results prevents a malicious user from tying up the server by sending it multiple all-inclusive LDAP search requests.

To limit LDAP search results:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the Open Directory master or an Open Directory replica server.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 4 Click Settings, then click LDAP.
- 5 From the Configure pop-up menu, choose LDAP Settings, then enter the maximum number of returned search results in the "Return a maximum of ___ search results" field.
- 6 Click Save.

Setting the Search Timeout Interval for LDAP Service

Using Server Admin, you can prevent one type of denial-of-service attack on Mac OS X Server by limiting the amount of time the server spends on one search of its shared LDAP directory domain.

Setting a search timeout prevents a malicious user from tying up the server by sending it an exceptionally complex LDAP search request.

To set a search timeout interval for LDAP service:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the Open Directory master or an Open Directory replica server.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 4 Click Settings, then click LDAP.
- 5 From the Configure pop-up menu, choose LDAP Settings, then specify a search timeout interval in the “Search times out in ___” field.
Set the time interval using the pop-up menu.
- 6 Click Save.

Setting up SSL for LDAP Service

Using Server Admin, you can enable Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) for encrypted communications between an Open Directory server’s LDAP directory domain and computers that access it. SSL uses a digital certificate to provide a certified identity for the server. You can use a self-signed certificate or a certificate obtained from a certificate authority.

For complete information about defining, obtaining, and installing certificates on your server, see *Mac OS X Server Security Configuration*.

SSL communications for LDAP use port 636. If SSL is disabled for LDAP service, communications are sent as clear text on port 389.

To set up SSL communications for LDAP service:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the Open Directory master or an Open Directory replica server.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 4 Click Settings, then click LDAP.
- 5 From the Configure pop-up menu, choose LDAP Settings, then select Enable SSL.

- 6 Use the Certificate pop-up menu to choose an SSL certificate that you want LDAP service to use.

The menu lists all SSL certificates that have been installed on the server. To use a certificate not listed, choose Custom Configuration from the pop-up menu.

- 7 Click Save.

Creating a Custom SSL Configuration for LDAP

SSL uses a digital certificate to provide a certified identity for the server. You can use custom digital certificates to configure SSL for your network environment. The following steps describe the command-line method for creating custom certificates and provide instructions for implementing them in Server Admin.

To create an Open Directory service certificate:

- 1 Generate a private key for the server in the /usr/share/certs/ folder:

If the /usr/share/certs folder does not exist create it.

```
$ sudo openssl genrsa -out ldapserver.key 2048
```

- 2 Generate a certificate signing request (CSR) for the certificate authority (CA) to sign:

```
$ sudo openssl req -new -key ldapserver.key -out ldapserver.csr
```

- 3 Fill out the following fields as completely as possible, making certain that the Common Name field matches the domain name of the LDAP server exactly, and leaving the challenge password and optional company name blank:

```
Country Name:
Organizational Unit:
State or Province Name:
Common Name:
Locality Name (city):
Email Address:
Organization Name:
```

- 4 Sign the ldapserver.csr request with the openssl command.

```
$ sudo openssl ca -in ldapserver.csr -out ldapserver.crt
```

- 5 When prompted, enter the CA passphrase to continue and complete the process.

The certificate files needed to enable SSL on the LDAP server are now in the /usr/share/certs/ folder.

- 6 Open Server Admin and connect to the Open Directory master or an Open Directory replica server.
- 7 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 8 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 9 Click Settings, then click LDAP.

- 10 From the Configure pop-up menu choose “LDAP Settings.”
- 11 Select Enable Secure Sockets Layer (SSL).
- 12 Use the Certificate pop-up menu to choose an SSL certificate that you want LDAP service to use.

The menu lists all SSL certificates that have been installed on the server. To use a certificate not listed, choose Custom Configuration from the pop-up menu.
- 13 Click Save.

Managing Open Directory Replication

You can schedule Open Directory replication or replicate on demand, promote a replica to a master, or take a replica out of service.

For more information, see:

- “Scheduling Replication of an Open Directory Master or Primary Domain Controller (PDC)” on page 189
- “Synchronizing an Open Directory Replica or BDC on Demand” on page 190
- “Making an Open Directory Replica into a Relay” on page 190
- “Promoting an Open Directory Replica” on page 190
- “Decommissioning an Open Directory Replica” on page 193

Scheduling Replication of an Open Directory Master or Primary Domain Controller (PDC)

Using Server Admin, you can specify how frequently an Open Directory master updates its replicas with changes to directory and authentication information. The master can update the replicas when a change occurs in the master directory domain or by following a schedule you specify.

The same steps are used if you set up your Mac OS X Server as a PDC. You set the schedule for PDC replication to the backup domain controller (BDC) by scheduling Open Directory replication.

To schedule how frequently an Open Directory master or PDC updates its replicas or BDCs:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the Open Directory master or PDC server.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.

The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 4 Click Settings, then click General.

5 Specify a replication frequency:

- **“Replicate to clients whenever the directory is modified:”** Keeps replicas updated with real-time changes, but increases network load. Can impair the performance of the master if a replica is connected through a slow network link.
- **“Replicate to clients every __:”** Allows you to schedule less frequent updates (by specifying a longer interval). Less frequent updates trades less accuracy of replicas for fewer network connections between the master and its replicas. If replicas are not all on the same LAN as the master, fewer network connections can be desirable.

6 Click Save.

Synchronizing an Open Directory Replica or BDC on Demand

Although an Open Directory master or PDC synchronizes its directory and authentication data with registered replicas or BDCs, you can use Server Admin to synchronize the data with a selected replica or BDC on demand.

To synchronize an Open Directory replica or BDC on demand:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the Open Directory master or PDC server.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 4 Click Settings, then click General.
- 5 Select a replica or BDC in the list, then click Replicate Now.

Making an Open Directory Replica into a Relay

There is not much difference between a relay and replica. Both have a read-only copy of the Open Directory master's LDAP directory domain and also a read/write copy of the Open Directory Password Server and the Kerberos Key Distribution Center (KDC).

A relay is a direct member replica of a Open Directory master and it has replicas that it replicates to.

You can make an Open Directory replica into a relay by ensuring the following:

- The replica must be a direct replica of the Open Directory master (first-tier).
- The replica must have replicas (supports up to 32 replicas).

For more information about relays, see “Cascading Replication” on page 64.

Promoting an Open Directory Replica

If an Open Directory master fails and you cannot recover it from a backup, you can promote a replica to be a master. The new master (promoted replica) uses the directory and authentication databases of the replica.

After doing this, you must convert all other replicas of the old master to standalone directory services and then make them replicas of the new master.

Important: Use this procedure only to replace an Open Directory master with its replica. To keep the Open Directory master in operation and make its replica another master, do not use this procedure. Instead, decommission the replica and then make it a master as described in “Decommissioning an Open Directory Replica” on page 193 and “Setting Up an Open Directory Master” on page 83.

To promote an Open Directory replica:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the replica server that you want to promote to a master.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 4 Click Settings, then click General.
- 5 Click Change.
This opens the Service Configuration Assistant.
- 6 Select Open Directory Master, then click Continue.
- 7 Enter the following Master Domain Administrator information, then click Continue.
 - **Name, Short Name, User ID, Password:** You must create a user account for the primary administrator of the LDAP directory. This account is not a copy of the administrator account in the server’s local directory domain. Make the names and user ID of the LDAP directory administrator different from the names and user IDs of user accounts in the local directory domain.

Note: If you plan to connect your Open Directory master to other directory domains, pick a unique name and user ID for each domain. Don’t use the suggested *diradmin* user ID. Use a name that helps you identify the directory domain that the directory administrator controls.
- 8 Enter the following Master Domain information, then click Continue.
 - **Kerberos Realm:** This field is preset to be the same as the server’s DNS name, converted to capital letters. This is the convention for naming a Kerberos realm. You can enter a different name if necessary.
 - **Search Base:** This field is preset to a search base suffix for the new LDAP directory, derived from the domain portion of the server’s DNS name. You can enter a different search base suffix or leave it blank. If you leave this field blank, the LDAP directory’s default search base suffix is used.
- 9 Confirm settings, then click Close.
This saves your setting and restarts the service.

- 10 In Server Admin, connect to another replica of the old master.
- 11 Click the triangle to the left of the server.

The list of services appears.
- 12 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 13 Click Settings, then click General.
- 14 Click Change.

The Service Configuration Assistant opens.
- 15 Choose Standalone, then click Continue.
- 16 Confirm the Open Directory configuration setting, then click Continue.
- 17 If you are sure that users and services no longer need access to the directory data stored in the shared directory domain that the server has been hosting or connected to, click Close.

This saves your setting and restarts the service.
- 18 Click Change.

The Service Configuration Assistant opens.
- 19 Choose Open Directory Replica, then click Continue.
- 20 Enter the following information:
 - **“IP address or DNS name of Open Directory master:”** Enter the IP address or DNS name of the server that is the Open Directory master.
 - **“Root password on Open Directory master:”** Enter the password of the Open Directory master system’s root user (user name system administrator).
 - **“Domain administrator’s short name:”** Enter the name of an LDAP directory domain administrator account.
 - **“Domain administrator’s password:”** Enter the password of the administrator account whose name you entered.
- 21 Click Continue.
- 22 Confirm the Open Directory configuration settings, then click Continue.
- 23 Click Close.

This saves your setting and restarts the service.
- 24 For each replica of the old master, repeat steps 14–23.
- 25 Make sure the date, time, and time zone are correct on the replicas and the master.

The replicas and the master should use the same network time service so their clocks remain in sync.

If other computers were connected to the old Open Directory master’s LDAP directory, reconfigure their connections to use the new master’s LDAP directory.

Each Mac OS X and Mac OS X Server computer with a custom search policy that included the old master's LDAP directory must be reconfigured to connect to the new master's LDAP directory. Use the Services and Authentication panes of Directory Utility. For more information, see "Deleting a Configuration for Accessing an LDAP Directory" on page 143, and "Configuring Access to an LDAP Directory" on page 136.

If DHCP service provided the old master's LDAP URL to computers with automatic search policies, reconfigure DHCP service to provide the new master's LDAP URL.

Mac OS X and Mac OS X Server computers with automatic search policies require no reconfiguration. They get the correct LDAP URL from the updated DHCP service the next time they start up.

For more information, see the DHCP chapter of *Network Services Administration*.

Decommissioning an Open Directory Replica

You can take an Open Directory replica server out of service by making it a standalone server or by connecting it to another system for directory and authentication services.

To decommission an Open Directory replica:

- 1 Verify that the network connection is working between the Open Directory master and the replica you want to decommission.

Port 389 or 636 must be open between master and replica while decommissioning the replica. LDAP uses port 389 if SSL is disabled or port 636 if SSL is enabled on the master. (Port 22, used for SSH, does not need to be open to decommission a replica.)

Important: If you decommission a replica while there is no network connectivity between it and the master, the decommissioned replica remains in the master's list of replicas. The master will try to replicate to the decommissioned replica as specified in the General settings pane for Open Directory service on the master server.

- 2 In Server Admin, connect to the replica you want to decommission.
- 3 Click the triangle to the left of the server.

The list of services appears.

- 4 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 5 Click Settings, then click General.
- 6 Click Change.

The Service Configuration Assistant opens.

- 7 Choose Standalone or Connected to a Directory System and enter the following information.
 - **"Root password on Open Directory master:"** Enter the password of the Open Directory master system's root user (user name system administrator).

- “**Domain administrator’s short name:**” Enter the name of an LDAP directory domain administrator account.
 - “**Domain administrator’s password:**” Enter the password of the administrator account whose name you entered.
- 8 Click Continue.
 - 9 Confirm the Open Directory configuration setting, then click Continue.
 - 10 If you are sure that users and services no longer need access to the directory data stored in the shared directory domain that the server has been hosting or connected to, click Close.

This saves your setting and restarts the service.

Assuming there is a network connection between the Open Directory master and the replica, the master is updated to no longer connect to the replica.
 - 11 If you chose “Connected to a Directory System” from the Role pop-up menu, click the Open Directory Utility button to configure access to one or more directory systems.

For more information about configuring access to a directory service, see Chapter 7, “Managing Directory Clients.”

Archiving an Open Directory Master

You can use Server Admin to archive a copy of an Open Directory master’s directory and authentication data. You can archive a copy of the data while the Open Directory master is in service.

The following files are archived:

- LDAP directory database and configuration files
- Open Directory password server database
- Kerberos database and configuration files
- Local directory domain and shadow password database

If you have a reliable archive of an Open Directory master, you effectively have an archive of all its replicas. If a replica develops a problem, you can change its Open Directory role to standalone server and then set up the server as if it were a new server, with a new host name, and set it up as a replica of the same master as before.

Important: Carefully safeguard the archive media that contains a copy of the Open Directory password database, the Kerberos database, and the Kerberos keytab file. The archive contains passwords of all users who have an Open Directory password, both in the shared LDAP directory domain and in the local directory domain. Your security precautions for the archive media should be as stringent as for the Open Directory master server.

To archive an Open Directory master:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to Open Directory master server.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 4 Click Archive.
- 5 In the Archive in field, enter the path to the folder where you want the Open Directory data archived, then click the Archive button.
You can type the folder path or click Choose to select it.
- 6 Enter a name and password to use in encrypting the archive, then click OK.

Restoring an Open Directory Master

You can use Server Admin or the `slapconfig` command-line tool to restore an Open Directory master's directory and authentication data from an archive.

If you use Server Admin, you can restore to a server that is an Open Directory master. The following files are restored by merging the archive with the existing master:

- LDAP directory database and configuration files
- Open Directory password server database
- Kerberos database and configuration files

If conflicts are encountered during the merge operation, the existing record takes precedence over the one in the archive. The archive record is ignored. Conflicts are recorded in the slapconfig log file (`/Library/Logs/slapconfig.log`), which you can view using Server Admin. See “Viewing Open Directory Status and Logs” on page 178.

Important: If you have an archive of a Mac OS X v10.4 Open Directory server you can only restore it to a Mac OS X v10.5 server. You cannot merge a Mac OS X v10.4 archive into a Mac OS X v10.5 Open Directory server.

Instead of restoring an Open Directory master from an archive, you may get better results by promoting a replica to be the master. The replica may have more recent directory and authentication data than the archive.

After restoring an Open Directory master from an archive, you must recreate your Open Directory replicas.

Important: Restoring an archive shouldn't be used as a means of porting directory and authentication data from one system to another. Instead, export from the source directory and import to the target directory. For more information about exporting and importing directory data, see *User Management*.

To merge an archive with an existing Open Directory master:

- 1 Open Server Admin and connect to the Open Directory master server.
The target server must have the same Kerberos realm name as the master that the archive was created from.
- 2 Click the triangle to the left of the server.
The list of services appears.
- 3 From the expanded Servers list, select Open Directory.
- 4 Click Archive.
- 5 In the Restore from field, enter the path to the Open Directory archive file, then click the Restore button.
You can type the path or click Choose to select the archive file.
- 6 Enter the password that was used to encrypt the archive when it was created, then click OK.
- 7 When the restore operation finishes, check the slapconfig log for information about conflicts or other events that occurred while restoring.
- 8 Convert existing Open Directory replica servers to Open Directory standalone servers and then make them replicas of the new master.
For more information, see “Setting Up a Standalone Directory Service” on page 81 and “Setting Up an Open Directory Replica” on page 88.

From the Command Line

Instead of restoring to a server that is an Open Directory master, you can restore to a standalone server by using the `slapconfig` command-line tool. The server becomes an Open Directory master with directory and authentication data from the archive.

The restored data includes the LDAP, Kerberos, and password server files listed above plus the local directory domain and associated shadow password files.

In addition, `slapconfig` preserves the local user account you used in the login window. After restoring, the master contains the user account records from the archive plus the account you used in the login window.

If the archive contains a user account that conflicts with the account you used in the login window, the account from the archive is ignored.

WARNING: If you restore a standalone server, the preexisting directory records and authentication data are not retained, except for the user account you used in the login window.

To replace the directory and authentication data on a standalone server with data from an Open Directory archive, enter the following command in Terminal, replacing *archive-path* with the path to the archive file:

```
$ sudo slapconfig -restoredb archive-path
```

The `slapconfig` command requires root privileges, hence the use of `sudo` in this command line. For more information about `slapconfig`, see its man page. For more information about `sudo` and root privileges, see *Command-Line Administration*.

This chapter provides solutions for common problems you might encounter while working with Open Directory.

This section contains solutions to common Open Directory problems.

Solving Open Directory Master and Replica Problems

Use the following to help solve Open Directory master and replica problems.

If Kerberos Is Stopped on an Open Directory Master or Replica

An Open Directory master requires properly configured DNS so it can provide single sign-on Kerberos authentication.

To confirm that DNS is configured correctly for Kerberos:

- 1 Make sure DNS service is configured to resolve fully qualified DNS names and provide corresponding reverse lookups.

DNS must resolve fully qualified DNS names and provide reverse lookups for the Open Directory master server, replica servers, and other servers that are members of the Kerberos realm.

To perform a DNS lookup of a server's DNS name and a reverse lookup of the server's IP address, you can use the Lookup pane of Network Utility (in /Applications/Utilities/).

For more information about setting up DNS service, see *Network Services Administration*.

- 2 Make sure the Open Directory master server's host name is the correct fully qualified DNS name, not the server's local hostname.

For example, the host name might be `ods.example.com` but should not be `ods.local`.

You can see the host name by opening Terminal and entering `hostname`.

If the Open Directory server's host name isn't its fully qualified DNS name, temporarily clear the list of DNS servers and click Apply in the Open Directory server's Network preferences. Then re-enter one or more DNS server IP addresses, starting with the primary DNS server that resolves the Open Directory server's name, and clicking Apply in Network Preferences.

If the Open Directory server's host name still isn't its fully qualified DNS name, restart the server.

- 3 Make sure the Open Directory master server's Network preferences are configured to use the DNS server that resolves the server's name.

If the Open Directory master server provides its own DNS service, the server's Network preferences must be configured to use itself as a DNS server.

- 4 After confirming the correct DNS configuration for the server, start Kerberos.

See "Starting Kerberos After Setting Up an Open Directory Master" on page 99.

If You Can't Create an Open Directory Replica

If you try to create two replicas simultaneously, one attempt will succeed and the other will fail. A subsequent attempt to establish the second replica should succeed. If you still can't create the second replica, go to folder `/var/run/`, look for the file `slapconfig.lock`, and remove it if it exists. Alternatively, restart the server.

If You Can't Create an Open Directory Master or Replica from a Configuration File

You can't make Mac OS X Server an Open Directory master or Open Directory replica by dragging a property-list configuration file to the Open Directory Settings pane in Server Admin. Instead, follow the instructions in "Setting Up an Open Directory Master" on page 83 or "Setting Up an Open Directory Replica" on page 88.

You create a property-list configuration file is by dragging the miniature window from the lower right corner of the Settings pane in Server Admin.

If You Can't Connect a Replica to Your Relay

Make sure your replica has not reached its capacity of 32 replicas. Also make sure that you are not connecting to a second tier replica instead of a first tier relay.

If You Can't Join an Open Directory Replica to an Open Directory that is a Subordinate of an Active Directory Server

Before you try to turn the server into a replica of the subordinate OD server make sure that you first connect the server to the same Active Directory server as the OD master server you are attempting to connect to. Your replicas must have access to the Active Directory server for Kerberos to work.

Solving Directory Connection Problems

Problems accessing directory services during startup can have several causes.

If a Delay Occurs During Startup

If Mac OS X or Mac OS X Server experience a startup delay while a message about LDAP or directory services appears above the progress bar, the computer could be trying to access an LDAP directory that is not available on your network. Consider the following:

- A pause during startup is normal if a portable computer is not connected to the network that the LDAP server is connected to.
- Use Directory Utility to make sure the local directory domain and LDAP configurations are correct.
- Use the Network pane of System Preferences to make sure the computer's network location and other network settings are correct.
- Inspect the physical network connection for faults.

Solving Authentication Problems

Use the following to help resolve authentication problems.

If You Can't Change a User's Open Directory Password

To change the password of a user whose password type is Open Directory, you must be an administrator of the directory domain where the user's record resides. In addition, your user account must have a password type of Open Directory.

The user account specified when the Open Directory master was set up (using Server Assistant or the Open Directory service settings in Server Admin) normally has an Open Directory password. You can use this account to set up other user accounts as directory domain administrators with Open Directory passwords.

If all else fails, use the root user account to set up a user account as a directory administrator with an Open Directory password. (The root user account's name is "root" and the password is usually the same as the password given to the administrator account created during server setup.)

If a User Can't Access Some Services

If a user can access some services that require authentication but not others, temporarily change the user's password to a simple sequence of characters, such as "password."

If this solves the problem, the user's previous password contained characters that were not recognized by all services. For example, some services accept spaces in passwords while others don't.

If a User Can't Authenticate for VPN Service

Users whose accounts are stored on a server with Mac OS X Server v10.2 can't authenticate to VPN service provided by Mac OS X Server v10.3–10.5. VPN service requires the MS-CHAPv2 authentication method, which isn't supported in Mac OS X Server v10.2.

To enable affected users to log in, move their user accounts to a server with Mac OS X Server v10.3–10.5. Alternatively, upgrade the older server to Mac OS X Server v10.5 or later.

If You Can't Change a User's Password Type to Open Directory

To change a user's password type to Open Directory authentication, you must be an administrator of the directory domain where the user's record resides. In addition, your user account must be configured for Open Directory authentication.

The user account specified when the Open Directory master was set up (using Server Assistant or the Open Directory service settings in Server Admin) has an Open Directory password. You can use this account to set up other user accounts as directory domain administrators with Open Directory passwords.

If Users Relying on a Password Server Can't Log In

If your network has a server with Mac OS X Server v10.2, it could be configured to get authentication from an Open Directory password server hosted by another server.

If the password server's computer becomes disconnected from your network, for example because you unplug the cable from the computer's Ethernet port, users whose passwords are validated using the password server can't log in because the IP address isn't accessible.

Users can log in to Mac OS X Server if you reconnect the password server's computer to the network. Alternatively, while the password server's computer is offline, users can log in with user accounts whose password type is crypt password or shadow password.

If Users Can't Log In with Accounts in a Shared Directory Domain

Users can't log in using accounts in a shared directory domain if the server hosting the directory isn't accessible. A server can become inaccessible due to a problem with the network, the server software, or the server hardware.

Problems with the server hardware or software affect users trying to log in to Mac OS X computers and users trying to log in to the Windows domain of a Mac OS X Server PDC. Network problems can affect some users but not others, depending on where the network problem is.

Users with mobile user accounts can still log in to Mac OS X computers they used previously, and users affected by these problems can log in by using a local user account defined on the computer, such as the user account created during setup after installing Mac OS X.

If You Can't Log In as an Active Directory User

After configuring a connection to an Active Directory domain in the Service pane of Directory Utility and adding it to a custom search policy in the Authentication pane, wait 10 or 15 seconds for the change to take effect. Attempts to log in immediately with an Active Directory account will be unsuccessful.

If Users Can't Authenticate Using Single Sign-On Kerberos

When a user or service that uses Kerberos experiences authentication failures, try these remedies:

- Kerberos authentication is based on encrypted time stamps. If there's more than a 5-minute difference between the KDC, client, and service computers, authentication may fail. Make sure the clocks for all computers are synchronized using the Network Time Protocol (NTP) service of Mac OS X Server or another network time server. For information about the NTP service of Mac OS X Server, see *Network Services Administration*.
- Make sure Kerberos is running on the Open Directory master and replicas. See "If Kerberos Is Stopped on an Open Directory Master or Replica" on page 199.
- If a Kerberos server used for password validation is not available, reset the user's password to use a server that is available.
- Make sure the server providing the Kerberized service has access to the Kerberos server's directory domain, and make sure this directory domain contains the accounts for users who are trying to authenticate using Kerberos. For information about configuring access to directory domains, see Chapter 7, "Managing Directory Clients."
- For an Open Directory server's Kerberos realm, make sure the client computer is configured to access the Open Directory server's LDAP directory using the correct search base suffix. The client's LDAPv3 search base suffix setting must match the LDAP directory's search base setting. The client's LDAPv3 search base suffix can be blank if it gets its LDAP mappings from the server. If so, the client uses the LDAP directory's default search base suffix.
 - To check the client's search base suffix setting, open Directory Utility, show the list of LDAPv3 configurations, and choose the item from the LDAP Mappings pop-up menu that's already selected in the menu. For more information, see "Changing a Configuration for Accessing an LDAP Directory" on page 140.
 - To check the LDAP directory's search base setting, open Server Admin and look in the Protocols pane of the Settings pane for Open Directory service.

- For information that can help you solve problems, see the KDC log. See “Viewing Open Directory Status and Logs” on page 178.
- If Kerberos was not running when user records were created, imported, or updated from an earlier Mac OS X version, they may not be enabled for Kerberos authentication:
 - A record isn’t enabled for Kerberos if its authentication authority attribute lacks the ;Kerberosv5; value. Use the Inspector in Workgroup Manager to see the values of a user record’s authentication authority attribute. For more information, see “Showing the Directory Inspector” on page 179.
 - Enable Kerberos for a user record by changing its password type. First set the password type to Crypt Password, then set it to Open Directory. For more information, see “Changing the Password Type to Crypt Password” on page 110 and “Changing the Password Type to Open Directory” on page 108.
- If users can’t authenticate using single sign-on or Kerberos for services provided by a server that is joined to an Open Directory master’s Kerberos realm, the server’s computer record might be incorrectly configured in the Open Directory master’s LDAP directory. The server’s name in the computer group account must be the server’s fully qualified DNS name, not just the server’s host name. For example, the name could be server2.example.com but not just server2.

To reconfigure a server’s computer record for single sign-on Kerberos authentication:

- 1 Delete the server from the computer group account in the LDAP directory.
For more information about this and the next step, see *User Management*.
- 2 Add the server to the computer group again.
- 3 Delegate authority again for joining the server to the Open Directory master’s Kerberos realm.
For more information, see “Delegating Authority to Join an Open Directory Kerberos Realm” on page 100.
- 4 Rejoin the server to the Open Directory Kerberos realm.
For more information, see “Joining a Server to a Kerberos Realm” on page 102.

If Users Can't Change Their Passwords

Users whose accounts reside in an LDAP directory not hosted by Mac OS X Server and who have a password type of crypt password cannot change their passwords after logging in from a client computer with Mac OS X version 10.3.

These users can change their passwords if you use Workgroup Manager's Advanced pane to change their accounts' User Password Type setting to Open Directory.

When you make this change, you must also enter a new password. Then instruct users to log in using this new password and change it in the Accounts pane of System Preferences.

If You Can't Join a Server to an Open Directory Kerberos Realm

If a user with delegated Kerberos authority can't join a server to an Open Directory master's Kerberos realm, the server's computer record may be incorrectly configured in the Open Directory master's LDAP directory.

The server's address in the computer group account must be the server's primary Ethernet address. The primary Ethernet address is the Ethernet ID of the first Ethernet port in the list of network port configurations shown in the server's Network preferences pane.

To reconfigure a server's computer record for joining a Kerberos realm:

- 1 Delete the server from the computer group account in the LDAP directory.
For more information about this and the next step, see *User Management*.
- 2 Add the server to the computer group again.
- 3 Delegate authority again for joining the server to the Open Directory master's Kerberos realm.

Skip this step if you can use a Kerberos administrator account (LDAP directory administrator account) to rejoin the server to the Kerberos realm.

For more information, see "Delegating Authority to Join an Open Directory Kerberos Realm" on page 100.

- 4 Rejoin the server to the Open Directory Kerberos realm.

For more information, see "Joining a Server to a Kerberos Realm" on page 102.

If You Must Reset an Administrator Password

Using the Mac OS X Server installation disc, you can change the password of a user account that has administrator privileges, including the system administrator (root or superuser) account.

Important: Because a user with the installation disc can gain unrestricted access to your server, restrict physical access to the server hardware.

To reset an administrator password:

- 1 Start up from the Mac OS X Server Install Disc 1.
- 2 When the Installer appears, choose Installer > Reset Password.
- 3 Select the hard disk volume that contains the administrator account whose password you want to reset.
- 4 From the pop-up menu, enter a new password, choose the administrator account, and click Save.

The system administrator account is the root user (superuser) account. Don't confuse this account with a normal administrator account.

Avoid changing the password of predefined user accounts. For more information about predefined user accounts, see *User Management*.

Note: This procedure changes the password of the administrator account in the server's local directory domain. It does not change the password of an administrator account in the server's shared directory domain, if the server has one.

If you know the password of an administrator account in the local domain, you can change the password of any other administrator account in the local directory domain by using Workgroup Manager instead of this procedure. For more information, see "Changing a User's Password" on page 106.

Mac OS X Directory Data

Knowing the Open Directory LDAP schema and the record types and attributes in Mac OS X directory domains can help you map to other directory domains and import or export user and group accounts.

This appendix lists Open Directory extensions to LDAP schema, mappings of Open Directory attributes to LDAP and Active Directory attributes, and the standard attributes in various types of records. Use this information for:

- Mapping object classes and attributes of non-Apple LDAP directories or Active Directory domains to Open Directory record types and attributes, as described in “Configuring LDAP Searches and Mappings” on page 146.
- Importing or exporting user or group accounts to an Open Directory domain, as described in *User Management*.
- Working in Workgroup Manager’s Inspector pane, as described in “Viewing and Editing Directory Data” on page 179.

Note: The following tables do not provide complete information for extending your schema. The table indicates the records and attributes that Open Directory uses from existing Active Directory and Unix RFC2307 schemas. It also indicates the attributes and records that do not have a direct mapping.

For details, see:

- “Open Directory Extensions to LDAP Schema” on page 208
 - “Object Classes in Open Directory LDAP Schema” on page 209
 - “Attributes in Open Directory LDAP Schema” on page 217
- “Mapping Standard Record Types and Attributes to LDAP and Active Directory” on page 237
 - “Mappings for Users” on page 238
 - “Mappings for Groups” on page 241
 - “Mappings for Mounts” on page 242
 - “Mappings for Computers” on page 243

- “Mappings for ComputerLists” on page 244
- “Mappings for Config” on page 245
- “Mappings for People” on page 246
- “Mappings for PresetComputerLists” on page 248
- “Mappings for PresetGroups” on page 248
- “Mappings for PresetUsers” on page 249
- “Mappings for Printers” on page 251
- “Mappings for AutoServerSetup” on page 252
- “Mappings for Locations” on page 253
- “Standard Open Directory Record Types and Attributes” on page 253
- “Standard Attributes in User Records” on page 253
- “Standard Attributes in Group Records” on page 258
- “Standard Attributes in Computer Records” on page 259
- “Standard Attributes in Computer Group Records” on page 260
- “Standard Attributes in Mount Records” on page 261
- “Standard Attributes in Config Records” on page 262

Open Directory Extensions to LDAP Schema

The schema for the Open Directory LDAP directories is based on the de facto standard attributes and object classes defined in the following Request for Comments documents of the Internet Engineering Task Force (RFCs of the IETF):

- RFC 2307 “An Approach for Using LDAP as a Network Information Service”
- RFC 2798 “Definition of the inetOrgPerson LDAP Object Class”

LDAP schema definitions specify syntax identifiers and matching rules that are defined in RFC 2252, “LDAPv3 Attributes.”

These RFCs are available at the IETF website: www.ietf.org/rfc.html.

The attributes and object classes defined in these RFCs form the basis of the Open Directory LDAP schema.

The extended schema for Open Directory LDAP directories includes the attributes and object classes defined in:

- “Object Classes in Open Directory LDAP Schema” on page 209
- “Attributes in Open Directory LDAP Schema” on page 217

Note: Apple may extend the Open Directory LDAP schema in the future; for example, to support new versions of Mac OS X and Mac OS X Server. The latest schema is available in text files on a computer with Mac OS X Server installed. The schema files are in the /etc/openldap/schema/ directory. The apple.schema file contains the latest schema extensions for Open Directory LDAP directories.

Object Classes in Open Directory LDAP Schema

This section defines the Open Directory LDAP object classes that extend the standard LDAP schema.

Container Structural Object Class

Container is a structural object class used for top-level record containers such as cn=users, cn=groups, and cn=mounts. There is no directory services analog to this object class, but the container name is part of the search base for each record type.

```
#objectclass (
# 1.2.840.113556.1.3.23
# NAME 'container'
# SUP top
# STRUCTURAL
# MUST ( cn ) )
```

Time to Live Object Class

```
objectclass (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.250.3.18
  NAME 'cacheObject'
  AUXILIARY
  SUP top
  DESC 'Auxiliary object class to hold TTL caching information'
  MAY ( ttl ) )
```

User Object Class

The apple-user object class is an auxiliary class used to store Mac OS X attributes that are not part of inetOrgPerson or posixAccount. This object class is used with kDSStdRecordTypeUsers records.

```
objectclass (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.1
  NAME 'apple-user'
  SUP top
  AUXILIARY
  DESC 'apple user account'
  MAY ( apple-user-homeurl $ apple-user-class $
        apple-user-homequota $ apple-user-mailattribute $
        apple-user-printattribute $ apple-mcxflags $
        apple-mcxsettings $ apple-user-adminlimits $
        apple-user-picture $ apple-user-authenticationhint $
```

```

apple-user-homesoftquota $ apple-user-passwordpolicy $
apple-keyword $ apple-generateduid $ apple-imhandle $
apple-webloguri $ authAuthority $ acctFlags $ pwdLastSet $
logonTime $ logoffTime $ kickoffTime $ homeDrive $ scriptPath $
profilePath $ userWorkstations $ smbHome $ rid $
primaryGroupID $ sambaSID $ sambaPrimaryGroupSID $
userCertificate $ jpegPhoto $ apple-nickname $
apple-namesuffix $ apple-birthday $ apple-relationships $
apple-organizationinfo $ apple-phonecontacts $
apple-emailcontacts $ apple-postaladdresses $
apple-mapcoordinates $ apple-mapuri $ apple-mapguid $
apple-serviceslocator) )

```

Group Auxiliary Object Class

The apple-group object class is an auxiliary class used to store Mac OS X attributes that are not part of posixGroup. This object class is used with kDSStdRecordTypeGroups records.

```

objectclass (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.14
  NAME 'apple-group'
  SUP top
  AUXILIARY
  DESC 'group account'
  MAY (
    apple-group-homeurl $
    apple-group-homeowner $
    apple-mcxflags $
    apple-mcxsettings $
    apple-group-realname $
    apple-user-picture $
    apple-keyword $
    apple-generateduid $
    apple-group-nestedgroup $
    apple-group-memberguid $
    mail $
    rid $
    sambaSID $
    ttl $
    jpegPhoto $
    apple-group-services $
    apple-contactguid $
    apple-ownerguid $
    labeledURI $
    apple-serviceslocator) )

```

Machine Auxiliary Object Class

```

objectclass (

```

```

1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.3
NAME 'apple-machine'
SUP top
AUXILIARY
MAY (  apple-machine-software $
        apple-machine-hardware $
        apple-machine-serves $
        apple-machine-suffix $
        apple-machine-contactperson ) )

```

Mount Object Class

```

objectclass (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.8
  NAME 'mount'
  SUP top STRUCTURAL
  MUST (  cn )
  MAY (  mountDirectory $
        mountType $
        mountOption $
        mountDumpFrequency $
        mountPassNo ) )

```

Printer Object Class

```

objectclass (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.9
  NAME 'apple-printer'
  SUP top STRUCTURAL
  MUST (  cn )
  MAY (  apple-printer-attributes $
        apple-printer-lprhost $
        apple-printer-lprqueue $
        apple-printer-type $
        apple-printer-note ) )

```

Computer Object Class

```

objectclass (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.10
  NAME 'apple-computer'
  DESC 'computer'
  SUP top STRUCTURAL
  MUST (  cn )
  MAY (  apple-realname $
        description $
        macAddress $
        apple-category $
        apple-computer-list-groups $
        apple-keyword $

```

```

apple-mcxflags $
apple-mcxsettings $
apple-networkview $
apple-xmlplist $
apple-service-url $
apple-serviceinfo $
apple-primarycomputerlist $
authAuthority $
uidNumber $ gidNumber $ apple-generateduid $ ttl $
acctFlags $ pwdLastSet $ logonTime $
logoffTime $ kickoffTime $ rid $ primaryGroupID $
sambaSID $ sambaPrimaryGroupSID
owner $ apple-ownerguid $ apple-contactguid $
ipHostNumber $ bootFile) )

```

ComputerList Object Class

```

objectclass (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.11
  NAME 'apple-computer-list'
  DESC 'computer list'
  SUP top STRUCTURAL
  MUST ( cn )
  MAY ( apple-mcxflags $
        apple-mcxsettings $
        apple-computer-list-groups $
        apple-computers $
        apple-generateduid $
        apple-keyword ) )

```

Configuration Object Class

```

objectclass (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.12
  NAME 'apple-configuration'
  DESC 'configuration'
  SUP top STRUCTURAL
  MAY ( cn $ apple-config-realname $
        apple-data-stamp $ apple-password-server-location $
        apple-password-server-list $ apple-ldap-replica $
        apple-ldap-writable-replica $ apple-keyword $
        apple-kdc-authkey $ apple-kdc-configdata $ apple-xmlplist $
        ttl ) )

```

Preset Computer List Object Class

```

objectclass (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.13
  NAME 'apple-preset-computer-list'
  DESC 'preset computer list'

```

```

SUP top STRUCTURAL
MUST ( cn )
MAY ( apple-mcxflags $
      apple-mcxsettings $
      apple-computer-list-groups $
      apple-keyword ) )

```

Preset Computer Object Class

```

objectclass (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.25
  NAME 'apple-preset-computer'
  DESC 'preset computer'
  SUP top STRUCTURAL
  MUST ( cn )
  MAY ( apple-mcxflags $
        apple-mcxsettings $
        apple-computer-list-groups $
        apple-primarycomputerlist $
        description $
        apple-networkview $
        apple-keyword ) )

```

Preset Computer Group Object Class

```

objectclass (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.26
  NAME 'apple-preset-computer-group'
  DESC 'preset computer group'
  SUP top STRUCTURAL
  MUST ( cn )
  MAY ( gidNumber $
        memberUID $
        apple-mcxflags $
        apple-mcxsettings $
        apple-group-nestedgroup $
        description $
        jpegPhoto $
        apple-keyword ) )

```

Preset Group Object Class

```

objectclass (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.3.14
  NAME 'apple-preset-group'
  DESC 'preset group'
  SUP top STRUCTURAL
  MUST ( cn )
  MAY ( memberUid $
        gidNumber $

```

```

description $
apple-group-homeurl $
apple-group-homeowner $
apple-mcxflags $
apple-mcxsettings $
apple-group-realname $
apple-keyword $
apple-group-nestedgroup $
apple-group-memberguid $
ttl $
jpegPhoto $
apple-group-services $
labeledURI) )) )

```

Preset User Object Class

```

objectclass (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.15
  NAME 'apple-preset-user'
  DESC 'preset user'
  SUP top STRUCTURAL
  MUST ( cn )
  MAY ( uid $
        memberUid $
        gidNumber $
        homeDirectory $
        apple-user-homeurl $
        apple-user-homequota $
        apple-user-homesoftquota $
        apple-user-mailattribute $
        apple-user-printattribute $
        apple-mcxflags $
        apple-mcxsettings $
        apple-user-adminlimits $
        apple-user-passwordpolicy $
        userPassword $
        apple-user-picture $
        apple-keyword $
        loginShell $
        description $
        shadowLastChange $
        shadowExpire $
        authAuthority $
        homeDrive $ scriptPath $ profilePath $ smbHome $
        apple-preset-user-is-admin
        jpegPhoto $
        apple-relationships $ apple-phonecontacts $ apple-emailcontacts $
        apple-postaladdresses $ apple-mapcoordinates ) )

```

Authentication Authority Object Class

```
objectclass (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.16
  NAME 'authAuthorityObject'
  SUP top STRUCTURAL
  MAY (   authAuthority   ) )
```

Server Assistant Configuration Object Class

```
objectclass (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.17
  NAME 'apple-serverassistant-config'
  SUP top STRUCTURAL
  MUST (   cn   )
  MAY (   apple-xmlplist   ) )
```

Location Object Class

```
objectclass (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.18
  NAME 'apple-location'
  SUP top AUXILIARY
  MUST (   cn   )
  MAY (   apple-dns-domain $ apple-dns-nameserver   ) )
```

Service Object Class

```
objectclass (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.19
  NAME 'apple-service'
  SUP top STRUCTURAL
  MUST (   cn $
          apple-service-type   )
  MAY (   ipHostNumber $
          description $
          apple-service-location $
          apple-service-url $
          apple-service-port $
          apple-dnsname $
          apple-keyword   ) )
```

Neighborhood Object Class

```
objectclass (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.20
  NAME 'apple-neighborhood'
  SUP top STRUCTURAL
  MUST (   cn   )
  MAY (   description $
          apple-generateduid $
          apple-category $
```

```

apple-nodexml $
apple-neighborhoodalias $
apple-computeraliases $
apple-keyword $
apple-realname $
apple-xmlplist $
ttl ) )

```

ACL Object Class

```

objectclass (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.21
  NAME 'apple-acl'
  SUP top STRUCTURAL
  MUST ( cn $
         apple-acl-entry ) )

```

Resource Object Class

```

objectclass (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.23
  NAME 'apple-resource'
  SUP top STRUCTURAL
  MUST ( cn )
  MAY ( apple-realname $ description $ jpegPhoto $ apple-keyword $
        apple-generateduid $ apple-contactguid $ apple-ownerguid $
        apple-resource-info $ apple-resource-type $ apple-capacity $
        labeledURI $ apple-mapuri $ apple-serviceslocator $
        apple-phonecontacts $ c $ apple-mapguid $ apple-mapcoordinates ) )

```

Augment Object Class

```

objectclass (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.24
  NAME 'apple-augment'
  SUP top
  STRUCTURAL
  MUST ( cn ) )

```

Automount Map Object Class

```

objectclass (
  1.3.6.1.1.1.2.16
  NAME 'automountMap'
  SUP top STRUCTURAL
  MUST ( automountMapName )
  MAY   description )

```

Automount Object Class

```

objectclass (

```



```

1.3.6.1.1.1.2.17
NAME 'automount'
SUP top STRUCTURAL
DESC 'Automount'
MUST ( automountKey $ automountInformation )
MAY     description )

```

Attributes in Open Directory LDAP Schema

This section defines the Open Directory LDAP attributes that extend the standard LDAP schema.

Time-to-Live Attribute

```

attributetype (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.250.1.60
  NAME 'ttl'
  EQUALITY integerMatch
  SYNTAX '1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.27' SINGLE-VALUE )

```

User Attributes

apple-user-homeurl

Used to store home folder information in the form of a URL and path. This maps to the kDS1AttrHomeDirectory attribute type in directory services.

```

attributetype (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.6
  NAME 'apple-user-homeurl'
  DESC 'home directory URL'
  EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
  SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
  SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 SINGLE-VALUE )

```

apple-user-class

Unused.

```

attributetype (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.7
  NAME 'apple-user-class'
  DESC 'user class'
  EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
  SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
  SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 SINGLE-VALUE )

```

apple-user-homequota

Used to specify the home folder quota in kilobytes.

```

attributetype (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.8
  NAME 'apple-user-homequota'
  DESC 'home directory quota'

```

```

EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 SINGLE-VALUE )

```

apple-user-mailattribute

Stores mail-related settings as XML.

```

attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.9
    NAME 'apple-user-mailattribute'
    DESC 'mail attribute'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 SINGLE-VALUE )

```

apple-mcxflags

Used to store managed client information. This attribute can be found in user, group, computer, and computer group records.

```

attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.10
    NAME 'apple-mcxflags'
    DESC 'mcx flags'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 SINGLE-VALUE )

```

apple-mcxsettings

Used to store managed client information. This attribute can be found in user, group, computer, and computer group records.

```

#attributetype (
# 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.11
# NAME 'apple-mcxsettings'
# DESC 'mcx settings'
# EQUALITY caseExactMatch
# SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
# SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 SINGLE-VALUE )
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.16
    NAME ( 'apple-mcxsettings' 'apple-mcxsettings2' )
    DESC 'mcx settings'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )

```

apple-user-picture

Stores a file system path to the picture to use for this user record when displayed in the login window. This is used when the network user is listed in the login window scrolling list (in managed networks).

By default, users can change their pictures.

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.12
    NAME 'apple-user-picture'
    DESC 'picture'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 SINGLE-VALUE )
```

apple-user-printattribute

Stores print quota settings as an XML plist.

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.13
    NAME 'apple-user-printattribute'
    DESC 'print attribute'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 SINGLE-VALUE )
```

apple-user-adminlimits

Used by Workgroup Manager to store an XML plist file describing the abilities of an administrator. These settings are respected and updated by Workgroup Manager but do not affect other parts of the system.

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.14
    NAME 'apple-user-adminlimits'
    DESC 'admin limits'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 SINGLE-VALUE )
```

apple-user-authenticationhint

Used by the login window to provide a hint if the user logs in incorrectly three times. By default each user can update their authentication hint.

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.15
    NAME 'apple-user-authenticationhint'
    DESC 'password hint'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 SINGLE-VALUE )
```

apple-user-homesoftquota

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.17
    NAME 'apple-user-homesoftquota'
    DESC 'home directory soft quota'
    EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
    SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 SINGLE-VALUE )
```

apple-user-passwordpolicy

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.18
    NAME 'apple-user-passwordpolicy'
    DESC 'password policy options'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 SINGLE-VALUE )
```

apple-keyword

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.19
    NAME ( 'apple-keyword' )
    DESC 'keywords'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

apple-generateduid

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.20
    NAME ( 'apple-generateduid' )
    DESC 'generated unique ID'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 SINGLE-VALUE )
```

apple-imhandle

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.21
    NAME ( 'apple-imhandle' )
    DESC 'IM handle (service:account name)'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

apple-webloguri

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.22
    NAME ( 'apple-webloguri' )
    DESC 'Weblog URI'
    EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
    SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 SINGLE-VALUE )
```

apple-mapcoordinates

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.23
    NAME ( 'apple-mapcoordinates' )
    DESC 'Map Coordinates'
    EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
    SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 )
```

apple-postaladdresses

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.24
    NAME ( 'apple-postaladdresses' )
    DESC 'Postal Addresses'
    EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
    SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 )
```

apple-phonecontacts

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.25
    NAME ( 'apple-phonecontacts' )
    DESC 'Phone Contacts'
    EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
    SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 )
```

apple-emailcontacts

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.26
    NAME ( 'apple-emailcontacts' )
    DESC 'EMail Contacts'
    EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
    SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 )
```

apple-birthday

```
attributetype (
```

```

1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.27
NAME ( 'apple-birthday' )
DESC 'Birthday'
EQUALITY generalizedTimeMatch
SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.24 SINGLE-VALUE )

```

apple-relationships

```

attributetype (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.28
  NAME ( 'apple-relationships' )
  DESC 'Relationships'
  EQUALITY caseExactMatch
  SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
  SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )

```

apple-company

```

attributetype (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.29
  NAME ( 'apple-company' )
  DESC 'company'
  EQUALITY caseExactMatch
  SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
  SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )

```

apple-nickname

```

attributetype (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.30
  NAME ( 'apple-nickname' )
  DESC 'nickname'
  EQUALITY caseExactMatch
  SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
  SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )

```

apple-mapuri

```

attributetype (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.31
  NAME ( 'apple-mapuri' )
  DESC 'Map URI'
  EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
  SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
  SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 )

```

apple-mapguid

```

attributetype (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.32
  NAME ( 'apple-mapguid' )
  DESC 'map GUID'

```

```

EQUALITY caseExactMatch
SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 SINGLE-VALUE )

```

apple-serviceslocator

```

attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.33
    NAME ( 'apple-serviceslocator' )
    DESC 'Calendar Principal URI'
    EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
    SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 )

```

apple-organizationinfo

```

attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.34
    NAME 'apple-organizationinfo'
    DESC 'Originization Info data'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )

```

apple-namesuffix

```

attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.35
    NAME ( 'apple-namesuffix' )
    DESC 'namesuffix'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )

```

apple-primarycomputerlist

```

attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.36
    NAME ( 'apple-primarycomputerlist' )
    DESC 'primary computer list'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 SINGLE-VALUE )

```

apple-user-homeDirectory

Not used by the Open Directory Server, but provided as an example OID and attribute to use as an alternative to the homeDirectory attribute for RFC 2307. This is primarily of interest to Active Directory administrators because Active Directory uses a homeDirectory attribute that differs from RFC 2307.

```

#attributetype (
# 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.100

```

```
# NAME 'apple-user-homeDirectory'
# DESC 'The absolute path to the home directory'
# EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
# SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 SINGLE-VALUE )
```

Group Attributes

apple-group-homeurl

Specifies the home folder associated with a managed client workgroup. This is mounted at login by any user in this workgroup.

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.14.1
    NAME 'apple-group-homeurl'
    DESC 'group home url'
    EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
    SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 SINGLE-VALUE )
```

apple-group-homeowner

Determines the owner of the workgroup home folder when created in the file system. The group of the directory is the workgroup it is associated with.

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.14.2
    NAME 'apple-group-homeowner'
    DESC 'group home owner settings'
    EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
    SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 SINGLE-VALUE )
```

apple-group-realname

Used to associate a longer, more user-friendly name with groups. This name appears in Workgroup Manager and can contain non-ASCII characters.

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.14.5
    NAME 'apple-group-realname'
    DESC 'group real name'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 SINGLE-VALUE )
```

apple-group-nestedgroup

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.14.6
    NAME 'apple-group-nestedgroup'
    DESC 'group real name'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
```



```
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

apple-group-memberguid

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.14.7
    NAME 'apple-group-memberguid'
    DESC 'group real name'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

apple-group-services

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.14.8
    NAME 'apple-group-services'
    DESC 'group services'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

apple-group-memberUid

Not used by an Open Directory server, but defined as an example attribute and OID that could be added to another LDAP server to support Mac OS X clients.

```
# Alternative to using memberUid from RFC 2307.
#attributetype (
# 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.14.1000
# NAME 'apple-group-memberUid'
# DESC 'group member list'
# EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
# SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 )
# can also use OID 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.1000
```

apple-contactguid

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.14.9
    NAME ( 'apple-contactguid' )
    DESC 'contact GUID'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 SINGLE-VALUE )
```

apple-ownerguid

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.14.10
    NAME ( 'apple-ownerguid' )
    DESC 'owner GUID'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
```

```

SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 SINGLE-VALUE )

```

apple-primarycomputerguid

```

attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.14.11
    NAME ( 'apple-primarycomputerguid' )
    DESC 'primary computer GUID'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 SINGLE-VALUE )

```

apple-group-expandednestedgroup

```

attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.14.12
    NAME 'apple-group-expandednestedgroup'
    DESC 'expanded nested group list'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )

```

Machine Attributes

apple-machine-software

```

attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.3.8
    NAME 'apple-machine-software'
    DESC 'installed system software'
    EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match
    SUBSTR caseIgnoreIA5SubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 )

```

apple-machine-hardware

```

attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.3.9
    NAME 'apple-machine-hardware'
    DESC 'system hardware description'
    EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match
    SUBSTR caseIgnoreIA5SubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 )

```

apple-machine-serves

```

attributeType (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.3.10
    NAME 'apple-machine-serves'
    DESC 'NetInfo Domain Server Binding'
    EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
    SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch

```

```
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 )
```

apple-machine-suffix

```
attributeType (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.3.11
  NAME 'apple-machine-suffix'
  DESC 'DIT suffix'
  EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
  SUBSTR caseIgnoreSubstringsMatch
  SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

apple-machine-contactperson

```
attributeType (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.3.12
  NAME 'apple-machine-contactperson'
  DESC 'Name of contact person/owner of this machine'
  EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
  SUBSTR caseIgnoreSubstringsMatch
  SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

attributeTypesConfig

```
attributeType (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.22.1
  NAME 'attributeTypesConfig'
  DESC 'RFC2252: attribute types'
  EQUALITY caseExactMatch
  SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
  SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

objectClassesConfig

```
attributeType (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.22.2
  NAME 'objectClassesConfig'
  EQUALITY caseExactMatch
  SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
  SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

Mount Attributes

mountDirectory

```
attributetype (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.8.1
  NAME 'mountDirectory'
  DESC 'mount path'
  EQUALITY caseExactMatch
  SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
  SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 SINGLE-VALUE )
```

mountType

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.8.2
    NAME 'mountType'
    DESC 'mount VFS type'
    EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match
    SUBSTR caseIgnoreIA5SubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 SINGLE-VALUE )
```

mountOption

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.8.3
    NAME 'mountOption'
    DESC 'mount options'
    EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match
    SUBSTR caseIgnoreIA5SubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 )
```

mountDumpFrequency

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.8.4
    NAME 'mountDumpFrequency'
    DESC 'mount dump frequency'
    EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match
    SUBSTR caseIgnoreIA5SubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 SINGLE-VALUE )
```

mountPassNo

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.8.5
    NAME 'mountPassNo'
    DESC 'mount passno'
    EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match
    SUBSTR caseIgnoreIA5SubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 SINGLE-VALUE )
```

apple-mount-name

```
# Alternative to using 'cn' when adding mount record schema to other LDAP
# servers
#attributetype (
# 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.8.100
# NAME ( 'apple-mount-name' )
# DESC 'mount name'
# SUP name )
```

Printer Attributes

apple-printer-attributes

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.9.1
    NAME 'apple-printer-attributes'
    DESC 'printer attributes in /etc/printcap format'
    EQUALITY caseIgnoreIA5Match
    SUBSTR caseIgnoreIA5SubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 )
```

apple-printer-lprhost

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.9.2
    NAME 'apple-printer-lprhost'
    DESC 'printer LPR host name'
    EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
    SUBSTR caseIgnoreSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

apple-printer-lprqueue

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.9.3
    NAME 'apple-printer-lprqueue'
    DESC 'printer LPR queue'
    EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
    SUBSTR caseIgnoreSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

apple-printer-type

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.9.4
    NAME 'apple-printer-type'
    DESC 'printer type'
    EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
    SUBSTR caseIgnoreSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

apple-printer-note

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.9.5
    NAME 'apple-printer-note'
    DESC 'printer note'
    EQUALITY caseIgnoreMatch
    SUBSTR caseIgnoreSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

Computer Attributes

apple-realname

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.10.2
    NAME 'apple-realname'
    DESC 'real name'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

apple-networkview

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.10.3
    NAME 'apple-networkview'
    DESC 'Network view for the computer'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

apple-category

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.10.4
    NAME 'apple-category'
    DESC 'Category for the computer or neighborhood'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

ComputerList Attributes

apple-computers

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.11.3
    NAME 'apple-computers'
    DESC 'computers'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

apple-computer-list-groups

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.11.4
    NAME 'apple-computer-list-groups'
    DESC 'groups'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

XML Plist Attribute

apple-xmlplist

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.17.1
    NAME 'apple-xmlplist'
    DESC 'XML plist data'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 SINGLE-VALUE )
```

Service URL Attribute

apple-service-url

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.19.2
    NAME 'apple-service-url'
    DESC 'URL of service'
    EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
    SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 )
```

Service Info Attribute

apple-serviceinfo

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.19.6
    NAME 'apple-serviceinfo'
    DESC 'service related information'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

Configuration Attributes

apple-password-server-location

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.12.1
    NAME 'apple-password-server-location'
    DESC 'password server location'
    EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
    SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 SINGLE-VALUE )
```

apple-data-stamp

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.12.2
    NAME 'apple-data-stamp'
    DESC 'data stamp'
```

```

EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 SINGLE-VALUE )

```

apple-config-realname

```

attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.12.3
    NAME 'apple-config-realname'
    DESC 'config real name'
    EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
    SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 SINGLE-VALUE )

```

apple-password-server-list

```

attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.12.4
    NAME 'apple-password-server-list'
    DESC 'password server replication plist'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 SINGLE-VALUE )

```

apple-ldap-replica

```

attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.12.5
    NAME 'apple-ldap-replica'
    DESC 'LDAP replication list'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )

```

apple-ldap-writable-replica

```

attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.12.6
    NAME 'apple-ldap-writable-replica'
    DESC 'LDAP writable replication list'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )

```

apple-kdc-authkey

```

attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.12.7
    NAME 'apple-kdc-authkey'
    DESC 'KDC master key RSA encrypted with realm public key'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch

```



```
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

apple-kdc-configdata

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.12.8
    NAME 'apple-kdc-configdata'
    DESC 'Contents of the kdc.conf file'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 SINGLE-VALUE )
```

PresetUser Attribute

apple-preset-user-is-admin

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.15.1
    NAME 'apple-preset-user-is-admin'
    DESC 'flag indicating whether the preset user is an administrator'
    EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
    SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 SINGLE-VALUE )
```

Authentication Authority Attributes

authAuthority

```
#attributetype (
# 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.16.1
# NAME 'authAuthority'
# DESC 'password server authentication authority'
# EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
# SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
# SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 )
```

authAuthority2

```
#attributetype (
# 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.16.2
# NAME ( 'authAuthority' 'authAuthority2' )
# DESC 'password server authentication authority'
# EQUALITY caseExactMatch
# SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
# SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

Location Attributes

apple-dns-domain

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.18.1
    NAME 'apple-dns-domain'
    DESC 'DNS domain'
```

```
EQUALITY caseExactMatch
SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

apple-dns-nameserver

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.18.2
    NAME 'apple-dns-nameserver'
    DESC 'DNS name server list'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

Service Attributes

apple-service-type

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.19.1
    NAME 'apple-service-type'
    DESC 'type of service'
    EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
    SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 )
```

apple-service-url

```
#attributetype (
# 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.19.2
# NAME 'apple-service-url'
# DESC 'URL of service'
# EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
# SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
# SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 )
```

apple-service-port

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.19.3
    NAME 'apple-service-port'
    DESC 'Service port number'
    EQUALITY integerMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.27 )
```

apple-dnsname

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.19.4
    NAME 'apple-dnsname'
    DESC 'DNS name'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
```

```
SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

apple-service-location

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.19.5
    NAME 'apple-service-location'
    DESC 'Service location'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

Neighborhood Attributes

apple-nodexml

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.20.1
    NAME 'apple-nodexml'
    DESC 'XML plist of directory node path'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

apple-neighborhoodalias

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.20.2
    NAME 'apple-neighborhoodalias'
    DESC 'XML plist referring to another neighborhood record'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

apple-computeraliases

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.20.3
    NAME 'apple-computeraliases'
    DESC 'XML plist referring to a computer record'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

ACL Attribute

apple-acl-entry

```
#attributetype (
# 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.21.1
# NAME 'apple-acl-entry'
# DESC 'acl entry'
# EQUALITY caseExactMatch
```

```
# SUBSTR caseExactSubstringsMatch
# SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
```

Schema Attributes

attributeTypesConfig

```
#attributetype (
# 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.22.1
# NAME 'attributeTypesConfig'
# DESC 'attribute type configuration'
# EQUALITY objectIdentifierFirstComponentMatch
# SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.3 )
```

objectClassesConfig

```
#attributetype (
# 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.22.2
# NAME 'objectClassesConfig'
# DESC 'object class configuration'
# EQUALITY objectIdentifierFirstComponentMatch
# SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.37 )
```

Resource Attribute

apple-resource-type

```
attributetype (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.23.1
  NAME 'apple-resource-type'
  DESC 'resource type'
  EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
  SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
  SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 )
```

apple-resource-info

```
attributetype (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.23.2
  NAME 'apple-resource-info'
  DESC 'resource info'
  EQUALITY caseExactIA5Match
  SUBSTR caseExactIA5SubstringsMatch
  SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.26 )
```

apple-capacity

```
attributetype (
  1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.23.3
  NAME 'apple-capacity'
  DESC 'capacity'
  EQUALITY integerMatch
  SYNTAX '1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.27' SINGLE-VALUE )
```

Automount Attribute

automountMapName

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.1.1.1.31
    NAME 'automountMapName'
    DESC 'automount Map Name'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15
    SINGLE-VALUE )
```

automountKey

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.1.1.1.32
    NAME 'automountKey'
    DESC 'Automount Key value'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15
    SINGLE-VALUE )
```

automountInformation

```
attributetype (
    1.3.6.1.1.1.1.33
    NAME 'automountInformation'
    DESC 'Automount information'
    EQUALITY caseExactMatch
    SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15
    SINGLE-VALUE )
```

Mapping Standard Record Types and Attributes to LDAP and Active Directory

This section specifies how Open Directory record types and attributes map to LDAP object classes and attributes. It also specifies how some Active Directory object categories and attributes are mapped to and generated from Open Directory record types and attributes.

The following tables do not provide mappings for extending your schema. The table indicates the records and attributes that Open Directory uses from existing Active Directory and Unix RFC2307 schemas. It also indicates the attributes and records that do not have direct mappings.

Mappings for Users

The following tables specify how the LDAPv3 plug-in in Directory Utility maps the Open Directory Users record type and attributes to LDAP object classes and attributes.

The tables also specify how the Active Directory plug-in in Directory Utility maps and generates Active Directory object categories and attributes from Open Directory record types and attributes.

Record Type Mappings for Users

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP object class name OID	Active Directory plug-in
Users, RFC 2798	inetOrgPerson 2.16.840.1.113730.3.2.2	ObjectCategory = Person
Users, RFC 2307	posixAccount 1.3.6.1.1.1.2.0	
Users, RFC 2307	shadowAccount 1.3.6.1.1.1.2.1	
Users, Apple registered	apple-user 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.1	Apple extended schema

Attribute Mappings for Users

Open Directory name, RFC/class, special purpose	LDAP attribute name OID	Active Directory plug-in
HomeDirectory, Apple registered	apple-user-homeurl 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.6	Generated from homeDirectory
HomeDirectoryQuota, Apple registered	apple-user-homequota 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.8	Apple extended schema
HomeDirectorySoftQuota, Apple registered	apple-user-homesoftquota 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.17	Apple extended schema
MailAttribute, Apple registered	apple-user-mailattribute 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.9	Apple extended schema
PrintServiceUserData, Apple registered	apple-user-printattribute 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.13	Apple extended schema
MCXFlags, Apple registered	apple-mcxflags 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.10	Apple extended schema
MCXSettings, Apple registered	apple-mcxsettings 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.16	Apple extended schema
AdminLimits, Apple registered	apple-user-adminlimits 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.14	Apple extended schema
AuthenticationAuthority, Apple registered	authAuthority 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.16.1	Generated as a Kerberos authority

Open Directory name, RFC/class, special purpose	LDAP attribute name OID	Active Directory plug-in
AuthenticationHint, Apple registered	apple-user-authenticationhint 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.15	Apple extended schema
PasswordPolicyOptions, Apple registered	apple-user-passwordpolicy 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.18	Apple extended schema
Keywords, Apple registered	apple-keyword 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.19	Apple extended schema
Picture, Apple registered	apple-user-picture 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.12	Apple extended schema
GeneratedUID, Apple registered	apple-generateduid 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.20	From GUID—formatted
RecordName, RFC 2256	cn 2.5.4.3	Generated from cn, userPrincipal, mail, sAMAccountName
RecordName, RFC 1274	uid 0.9.2342.19200300.100.1.1	N/A
EMailAddress, RFC 1274	mail 0.9.2342.19200300.100.1.3	RFC standard
RealName, RFC 2256	cn 2.5.4.3	1.2.840.113556.1.2.13 (Microsoft)
Password, RFC 2256	userPassword 2.5.4.35	No mapping
Comment, RFC 2256	description 2.5.4.13	RFC standard
LastName, RFC 2256	sn 2.5.4.4	RFC standard
FirstName, RFC 2256	givenName 2.5.4.42	RFC standard
PhoneNumber, RFC 2256	telephoneNumber 2.5.4.20	RFC standard
AddressLine1, RFC 2256	street 2.5.4.9	RFC standard
PostalAddress, RFC 2256	postalAddress 2.5.4.16	RFC standard
PostalCode, RFC 2256	postalCode 2.5.4.17	RFC standard
OrganizationName, RFC 2256	o 2.5.4.10	1.2.840.113556.1.2.146 (Microsoft)
UserShell, RFC 2307	loginShell 1.3.6.1.1.1.1.4	Extended using RFC
Change, RFC 2307	shadowLastChange 1.3.6.1.1.1.1.5	No mapping

Open Directory name, RFC/class, special purpose	LDAP attribute name OID	Active Directory plug-in
Expire, RFC 2307	shadowExpire 1.3.6.1.1.1.1.10	No mapping
UniqueID, RFC 2307	uidNumber 1.3.6.1.1.1.1.0	Generated from GUID
NFSHomeDirectory, RFC 2307	homeDirectory 1.3.6.1.1.1.1.3	Generated from homeDirectory
PrimaryGroupID, RFC 2307	gidNumber 1.3.6.1.1.1.1.1	Extended using RFC or generated from GUID
SMBAccountFlags, Samba registered, Apple PDC	acctFlags 1.3.6.1.4.1.7165.2.1.4	1.2.840.113556.1.4.302 (Microsoft)
SMBPasswordLastSet, Samba registered, Apple PDC	pwdLastSet 1.3.6.1.4.1.7165.2.1.3	1.2.840.113556.1.4.96 (Microsoft)
SMBLogonTime, Samba registered, Apple PDC	logonTime 1.3.6.1.4.1.7165.2.1.5	1.2.840.113556.1.4.52 (Microsoft)
SMBLogoffTime, Samba registered, Apple PDC	logoffTime 1.3.6.1.4.1.7165.2.1.6	1.2.840.113556.1.4.51 (Microsoft)
SMBKickoffTime, Samba registered, Apple PDC	kickoffTime 1.3.6.1.4.1.7165.2.1.7	No mapping
SMBHomeDrive, Samba registered, Apple PDC	homeDrive 1.3.6.1.4.1.7165.2.1.10	1.2.840.113556.1.4.45 (Microsoft)
SMBScriptPath, Samba registered, Apple PDC	scriptPath 1.3.6.1.4.1.7165.2.1.11	1.2.840.113556.1.4.62 (Microsoft)
SMBProfilePath, Samba registered, Apple PDC	profilePath 1.3.6.1.4.1.7165.2.1.12	1.2.840.113556.1.4.139 (Microsoft)
SMBUserWorkstations, Samba registered, Apple PDC	userWorkstations 1.3.6.1.4.1.7165.2.1.13	1.2.840.113556.1.4.86 (Microsoft)
SMBHome, Samba registered, Apple PDC	smbHome 1.3.6.1.4.1.7165.2.1.17	1.2.840.113556.1.4.44 (Microsoft)
SMBRID, Samba registered, Apple PDC	rid 1.3.6.1.4.1.7165.2.1.14	1.2.840.113556.1.4.153 (Microsoft)

Open Directory name, RFC/class, special purpose	LDAP attribute name OID	Active Directory plug-in
SMBGroupRID, Samba registered, Apple PDC	primaryGroupID 1.3.6.1.4.1.7165.2.1.15	1.2.840.113556.1.4.98 (Microsoft)
FaxNumber, RFC 2256	fax 2.5.4.23	RFC standard
MobileNumber, RFC 1274	mobile 0.9.2342.19200300.100.1.41	RFC standard
PagerNumber, RFC 1274	pager 0.9.2342.19200300.100.1.42	RFC standard
Department, RFC 2798,	departmentNumber 2.16.840.1.113730.3.1.2	1.2.840.113556.1.2.141 (Microsoft)
NickName, Microsoft Attribute		1.2.840.113556.1.2.447 (Microsoft)
JobTitle, RFC 2256	title 2.5.4.12	RFC standard
Building, RFC 2256	buildingName 2.5.4.19	RFC standard
Country, RFC 2256	c 2.5.4.6	RFC standard
Street, RFC 2256	street 2.5.4.9	1.2.840.113556.1.2.256 (Microsoft)
City, RFC 2256	locality 2.5.4.7	RFC standard
State, RFC 2256	st 2.5.4.8	RFC standard

Mappings for Groups

The following tables specify how the LDAPv3 plug-in in Directory Utility maps the Open Directory Groups record type and attributes to LDAP object classes.

The tables also specify how the Active Directory plug-in in Directory Utility maps and generates Active Directory object categories and attributes from Open Directory record types and attributes.

Record Type Mappings for Groups

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP object class name OID	Active Directory plug-in
Groups, RFC 2307	posixGroup 1.3.6.1.1.1.2.2	objectCategory = Group
Groups, Apple registered	apple-group 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.14	Apple extended schema

Attribute Mappings for Groups

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP attribute name OID	Active Directory plug-in
RecordName, RFC 2256	cn 2.5.4.3	RFC standard
HomeDirectory, Apple registered	apple-group-homeurl 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.14.1	Apple extended schema
HomeLocOwner, Apple registered	apple-group-homeowner 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.14.2	Apple extended schema
MCXFlags, Apple registered	apple-mcxflags 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.10	Apple extended schema
MCXSettings, Apple registered	apple-mcxsettings 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.16	Apple extended schema
RealName, Apple registered	apple-group-realname 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.14.5	1.2.840.113556.1.2.13 (Microsoft)
Picture, Apple registered	apple-user-picture 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.12	Apple extended schema
Keywords, Apple registered	apple-keyword 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.19	Apple extended schema
GeneratedUID, Apple registered	apple-generateduid 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.20	From GUID—formatted
GroupMembership, RFC 2307	memberUid 1.3.6.1.1.1.1.12	Generated from member
Member, RFC 2307	memberUid 1.3.6.1.1.1.1.12	Same as GroupMembership
PrimaryGroupID, RFC 2307	gidNumber 1.3.6.1.1.1.1.1	Extended using RFC or generated from GUID

Mappings for Mounts

The following tables specify how the LDAPv3 plug-in in Directory Utility maps the Open Directory Mounts record type and attributes to LDAP object classes and attributes.

The tables also specify how the Active Directory plug-in in Directory Utility maps and generates Active Directory object categories and attributes from Open Directory record types and attributes.

Record Type Mappings for Mounts

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP object class name OID	Active Directory plug-in
Mounts, Apple registered	mount 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.8	Apple extended schema

Attribute Mappings for Mounts

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP attribute name OID	Active Directory plug-in
RecordName, RFC 2256	cn 2.5.4.3	RFC standard
VFSLinkDir, Apple registered	mountDirectory 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.8.1	Apple extended schema
VFSOpts, Apple registered	mountOption 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.8.3	Apple extended schema
VFSType, Apple registered	mountType 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.8.2	Apple extended schema
VFSDumpFreq, Apple registered	mountDumpFrequency 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.8.4	Apple extended schema
VFSPassNo, Apple registered	mountPassNo 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.8.5	Apple extended schema

Mappings for Computers

The following tables specify how the LDAPv3 plug-in in Directory Utility maps the Open Directory Computers record type and attributes to LDAP object classes.

The tables also specify how the Active Directory plug-in in Directory Utility maps and generates Active Directory object categories and attributes from Open Directory record types and attributes.

Record Type Mappings for Computers

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP object class name OID	Active Directory plug-in
Computers, Apple registered	apple-computer 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.10	objectCategory = Computer

Attribute Mappings for Computers

Open Directory name, RFC/class, special purpose	LDAP attribute name OID	Active Directory plug-in
RecordName, RFC 2256	cn 2.5.4.3	RFC standard
RealName, Apple registered	apple-realname 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.10.2	1.2.840.113556.1.2.13 (Microsoft)
MCXFlags, Apple registered	apple-mcxflags 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.10	Apple extended schema
MCXSettings, Apple registered	apple-mcxsettings 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.16	Apple extended schema

Open Directory name, RFC/class, special purpose	LDAP attribute name OID	Active Directory plug-in
Group, Apple registered	apple-computer-list-groups 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.11.4	Apple extended schema
AuthenticationAuthority, Apple registered	authAuthority 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.16.1	N/A
GeneratedUID, Apple registered	apple-generateduid 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.20	From GUID—formatted
XMLPlist, Apple registered	apple-xmlplist 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.17.1	Apple extended schema
Comment, RFC 2256	description 2.5.4.13	RFC standard
ENetAddress, RFC 2307	macAddress 1.3.6.1.1.1.1.22	Extended using RFC
UniqueID, RFC 2307	uidNumber 1.3.6.1.1.1.1.0	Generated from GUID
PrimaryGroupID, RFC 2307	gidNumber 1.3.6.1.1.1.1.1	Extended using RFC or generated
SMBAccountFlags, Samba registered, Apple PDC	acctFlags 1.3.6.1.4.1.7165.2.1.4	1.2.840.113556.1.4.302 (Microsoft)
SMBPasswordLastSet, Samba registered, Apple PDC	pwdLastSet 1.3.6.1.4.1.7165.2.1.3	1.2.840.113556.1.4.96 (Microsoft)
SMBLogonTime, Samba registered, Apple PDC	logonTime 1.3.6.1.4.1.7165.2.1.5	1.2.840.113556.1.4.52 (Microsoft)
SMBLogoffTime, Samba registered, Apple PDC	logoffTime 1.3.6.1.4.1.7165.2.1.6	1.2.840.113556.1.4.51 (Microsoft)
SMBKickoffTime, Samba registered, Apple PDC	kickoffTime 1.3.6.1.4.1.7165.2.1.7	No mapping
SMBRID, Samba registered, Apple PDC	rid 1.3.6.1.4.1.7165.2.1.14	1.2.840.113556.1.4.153 (Microsoft)
SMBGroupID, Samba registered, Apple PDC	primaryGroupID 1.3.6.1.4.1.7165.2.1.15	1.2.840.113556.1.4.98 (Microsoft)

Mappings for ComputerLists

The following tables specify how the LDAPv3 plug-in in Directory Utility maps the Open Directory ComputerLists record type and attributes to LDAP object classes.

The tables also specify how the Active Directory plug-in in Directory Utility maps and generates Active Directory object categories and attributes from Open Directory record types and attributes.

Record Type Mappings for ComputerLists

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP object class name OID	Active Directory plug-in
ComputerLists, Apple registered	apple-computer-list 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.11	Apple extended schema

Attribute Mappings for ComputerLists

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP attribute name OID	Active Directory plug-in
RecordName, RFC 2256	cn 2.5.4.3	RFC standard
MCXFlags, Apple registered	apple-mcxflags 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.10	Apple extended schema
MCXSettings, Apple registered	apple-mcxsettings 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.16	Apple extended schema
Computers, Apple registered	apple-computers 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.3	Apple extended schema
Group, Apple registered	apple-computer-list-groups 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.4	Apple extended schema
Keywords, Apple registered	apple-keyword 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.19	Apple extended schema

Mappings for Config

The following tables specify how the LDAPv3 plug-in in Directory Utility maps the Open Directory Config record type and attributes to LDAP object classes.

The tables also specify how the Active Directory plug-in in Directory Utility maps and generates Active Directory object categories and attributes from Open Directory record types and attributes.

Record Type Mappings for Config

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP object class name OID	Active Directory plug-in
Config, Apple registered	apple-configuration 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.12	Apple extended schema

Attribute Mappings for Config

Open Directory name, RFC/class, special purpose	LDAP attribute name OID	Active Directory plug-in
RecordName, RFC 2256	cn 2.5.4.3	RFC standard
RealName, Apple registered	apple-config-realname 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.12.3	1.2.840.113556.1.2.13 (Microsoft)
DataStamp, Apple registered	apple-data-stamp 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.12.2	Apple extended schema
KDCAuthKey, Apple registered, Apple KDC	apple-kdc-authkey 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.12.7	No mapping
KDCConfigData, Apple registered, Apple KDC	apple-kdc-configdata 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.12.8	No mapping
Keywords, Apple registered	apple-keyword 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.12.19	Apple extended schema
LDAPReadReplicas, Apple registered, Apple LDAP Server	apple-ldap-replica 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.12.5	No mapping
LDAPWriteReplicas, Apple registered, Apple LDAP Server	apple-ldap-writable-replica 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.12.6	No mapping
PasswordServerList, Apple registered, Password Server	apple-password-server-list 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.12.4	No mapping
PasswordServerLocation, Apple registered, Password Server	apple-password-server-location 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.12.1	No mapping
XMLPlist, Apple registered	apple-xmlplist 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.17.1	Apple extended schema

Mappings for People

The following tables specify how the LDAPv3 plug-in in Directory Utility maps the Open Directory People record type and attributes to LDAP object classes.

The tables also specify how the Active Directory plug-in in Directory Utility maps and generates Active Directory object categories and attributes from Open Directory record types and attributes.

Record Type Mappings for People

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP object class name OID	Active Directory plug-in
People, RFC 2798	inetOrgPerson 2.16.840.1.113730.3.2.2	RFC standard

Attribute Mappings for People

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP attribute name OID	Active Directory plug-in
RecordName, RFC 2256	cn 2.5.4.3	RFC standard
EMailAddress, RFC 1274	mail 0.9.2342.19200300.100.1.3	RFC standard
RealName, RFC 2256	cn 1.2.840.113556.1.3.23	RFC standard
LastName, RFC 2256	sn 2.5.4.4	RFC standard
FirstName, RFC 2256	givenName 2.5.4.42	RFC standard
FaxNumber, RFC 2256	fax 2.5.4.23	RFC standard
MobileNumber, RFC 1274	mobile 0.9.2342.19200300.100.1.41	RFC standard
PagerNumber, RFC 1274	pager 0.9.2342.19200300.100.1.42	RFC standard
Department, RFC 2798,	departmentNumber 2.16.840.1.113730.3.1.2	1.2.840.113556.1.2.141 (Microsoft)
JobTitle, RFC 2256	title 2.5.4.12	RFC standard
PhoneNumber, RFC 2256	telephoneNumber 2.5.4.20	RFC standard
AddressLine1, RFC 2256	street 2.5.4.9	RFC standard
Street, RFC 2256	street 2.5.4.9	RFC standard
PostalAddress, RFC 2256	postalAddress 2.5.4.16	RFC standard
City, RFC 2256	locality 2.5.4.7	RFC standard
State, RFC 2256	st 2.5.4.8	RFC standard
Country, RFC 2256	c 2.5.4.6	RFC standard

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP attribute name OID	Active Directory plug-in
PostalCode, RFC 2256	postalCode 2.5.4.17	RFC standard
OrganizationName, RFC 2256	o 2.5.4.10	1.2.840.113556.1.2.146 (Microsoft)

Mappings for PresetComputerLists

The following tables specify how the LDAPv3 plug-in in Directory Utility maps the Open Directory PresetComputerLists record type and attributes to LDAP object classes.

The tables also specify how the Active Directory plug-in in Directory Utility maps and generates Active Directory object categories and attributes from Open Directory record types and attributes.

Record Type Mappings for PresetComputerLists

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP object class name OID	Active Directory plug-in
PresetComputerLists, Apple registered	apple-preset-computer-list 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.13	Apple extended schema

Attribute Mappings for PresetComputerLists

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP attribute name OID	Active Directory plug-in
RecordName, RFC 2256	cn 2.5.4.3	RFC standard
MCXFlags, Apple registered	apple-mcxflags 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.10	Apple extended schema
MCXSettings, Apple registered	apple-mcxsettings 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.16	Apple extended schema
Keywords, Apple registered	apple-keyword 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.19	Apple extended schema

Mappings for PresetGroups

The following tables specify how the LDAPv3 plug-in in Directory Utility maps the Open Directory PresetGroups record type and attributes to LDAP object classes.

The tables also specify how the Active Directory plug-in in Directory Utility maps and generates Active Directory object categories and attributes from Open Directory record types and attributes.

Record Type Mappings for PresetGroups

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP object class name OID	Active Directory plug-in
PresetGroups, Apple registered	apple-preset-group 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.3.14	Apple extended schema

Attribute Mappings for PresetGroups

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP attribute name OID	Active Directory plug-in
HomeDirectory, Apple registered	apple-group-homeurl 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.6	Apple extended schema
HomeLocOwner, Apple registered	apple-group-homeowner 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.14.2	Apple extended schema
MCXFlags, Apple registered	apple-mcxflags 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.10	Apple extended schema
MCXSettings, Apple registered	apple-mcxsettings 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.16	Apple extended schema
RealName, Apple registered	apple-group-realname 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.14.5	Apple extended schema
Keywords, Apple registered	apple-keyword 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.1.19	Apple extended schema
RecordName, RFC 2256	cn 2.5.4.3	RFC standard
GroupMembership, RFC 2307	memberUid 1.3.6.1.1.1.1.12	Extended using RFC
PrimaryGroupID, RFC 2307	gidNumber 1.3.6.1.1.1.1.1	Extended using RFC

Mappings for PresetUsers

The following tables specify how the LDAPv3 plug-in in Directory Utility maps the Open Directory PresetUsers record type and attributes to LDAP object classes.

The tables also specify how the Active Directory plug-in in Directory Utility maps and generates Active Directory object categories and attributes from Open Directory record types and attributes.

Record Type Mappings for PresetUsers

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP object class name OID	Active Directory plug-in
PresetUsers, Apple registered	apple-preset-user 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.15	ObjectCategory = Person

Attribute Mappings for PresetUsers

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP attribute name OID	Active Directory plug-in
HomeDirectory, Apple registered	apple-user-homeurl 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.6	N/A
HomeDirectoryQuota, Apple registered	apple-user-homequota 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.8	Apple extended schema
HomeDirectorySoftQuota, Apple registered	apple-user-homesoftquota 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.17	Apple extended schema
MailAttribute, Apple registered	apple-user-mailattribute 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.9	Apple extended schema
PrintServiceUserData, Apple registered	apple-user-printattribute 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.13	Apple extended schema
MCXFlags, Apple registered	apple-mcxflags 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.10	Apple extended schema
MCXSettings, Apple registered	apple-mcxsettings 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.16	Apple extended schema
AdminLimits, Apple registered	apple-user-adminlimits 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.14	Apple extended schema
Picture, Apple registered	apple-user-picture 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.12	Apple extended schema
AuthenticationAuthority, Apple registered	authAuthority 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.16.1	N/A
PasswordPolicyOptions, Apple registered	apple-user-passwordpolicy 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.18	Apple extended schema
PresetUsersIsAdmin, Apple registered	apple-preset-user-is-admin 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.15.1	Apple extended schema
Keywords, Apple registered	apple-keyword 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.19	Apple extended schema
RecordName, RFC 1274	cn 2.5.4.3	RFC standard
RealName, RFC 2256	cn 2.5.4.3	RFC standard
Password, RFC 2256	userPassword 2.5.4.35	N/A
GroupMembership, RFC 2307	memberUid 1.3.6.1.1.1.12	Extended using RFC
PrimaryGroupID, RFC 2307	gidNumber 1.3.6.1.1.1.1	Extended using RFC
NFSHomeDirectory, RFC 2307	homeDirectory 1.3.6.1.1.1.3	N/A
UserShell, RFC 2307	loginShell 1.3.6.1.1.1.4	Extended using RFC

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP attribute name OID	Active Directory plug-in
Change, RFC 2307	shadowLastChange 1.3.6.1.1.1.1.5	N/A
Expire, RFC 2307	shadowExpire 1.3.6.1.1.1.1.10	N/A

Mappings for Printers

The following tables specify how the LDAPv3 plug-in in Directory Utility maps the Open Directory Printers record type and attributes to LDAP object classes.

The tables also specify how the Active Directory plug-in in Directory Utility maps and generates Active Directory object categories and attributes from Open Directory record types and attributes.

Record Type Mappings for Printers

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP object class name OID	Active Directory plug-in
Printers, Apple registered	apple-printer 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.9	ObjectCategory = Print-Queue
Printers, IETF-Draft-IPP-LDAP	printerIPP 1.3.18.0.2.6.256	

Attribute Mappings for Printers

Open Directory name, RFC/class, special purpose	LDAP attribute name OID	Active Directory plug-in
RecordName, RFC 2256	cn 2.5.4.3	RFC standard
RealName, RFC 2256	Not premapped	1.2.840.113556.1.4.300 (Microsoft)
PrinterLPRHost, Apple registered, legacy support	apple-printer-lprhost 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.9.2	N/A
PrinterLPRQueue, Apple registered, legacy support	apple-printer-lprqueue 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.9.3	N/A
PrinterType, Apple registered, legacy support	apple-printer-type 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.9.4	N/A
PrinterNote, Apple registered, legacy support	apple-printer-note 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.9.5	N/A

Open Directory name, RFC/class, special purpose	LDAP attribute name OID	Active Directory plug-in
Location, IETF-Draft-IPP-LDAP	Not premapped; could map to: printer-location 1.3.18.0.2.4.1136	1.2.840.113556.1.4.222 (Microsoft)
Comment, RFC 2256	Not premapped; could map to: description 2.5.4.13	RFC standard
PrinterMakeAndModel, IETF-Draft-IPP-LDAP	Not premapped; could map to: printer-make-and-model 1.3.18.0.2.4.1138	1.2.840.113556.1.4.229 (Microsoft)
PrinterURI, IETF-Draft-IPP-LDAP	Not premapped; could map to: printer-uri 1.3.18.0.2.4.1140	Generated from uNCName
PrinterXRISupported, IETF-Draft-IPP-LDAP	Not premapped; could map to: printer-xri-supported 1.3.18.0.2.4.1107	Generated from portName/ uNCName
Printer1284DeviceID, Apple registered	Not premapped; could map to: printer-1284-device-id 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.9.6	Apple extended schema

Mappings for AutoServerSetup

The following tables specify how the LDAPv3 plug-in in Directory Utility maps the Open Directory AutoServerSetup record type and attributes to LDAP object classes.

The tables also specify how the Active Directory plug-in in Directory Utility maps and generates Active Directory object categories and attributes from Open Directory record types and attributes.

Record Type Mappings for AutoServerSetup

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP object class name OID	Active Directory plug-in
AutoServerSetup, Apple registered	apple-serverassistant-config 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.17	Apple extended schema

Attribute Mappings for AutoServerSetup

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP attribute name OID	Active Directory plug-in
RecordName, RFC 2256	cn 2.5.4.3	RFC standard
XMLPlist, Apple registered	apple-xmlplist 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.17.1	Apple extended schema

Mappings for Locations

The following tables specify how the LDAPv3 plug-in in Directory Utility maps the Open Directory Locations record type and attributes to LDAP object classes.

The tables also specify how the Active Directory plug-in in Directory Utility maps and generates Active Directory object categories and attributes from Open Directory record types and attributes.

Record Type Mappings for Locations

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP object class name OID	Active Directory plug-in
Locations, Apple registered	apple-location 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.2.18	Apple extended schema

Attribute Mappings for Locations

Open Directory name, RFC/class	LDAP attribute name OID	Active Directory plug-in
RecordName, RFC 2256	cn 2.5.4.3	RFC standard
DNSDomain, Apple registered	apple-dns-domain 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.18.1	Apple extended schema
DNSNameServer, Apple registered	apple-dns-nameserver 1.3.6.1.4.1.63.1000.1.1.1.18.2	Apple extended schema

Standard Open Directory Record Types and Attributes

For information about standard attributes and record types in Open Directory domains, see:

- “Standard Attributes in User Records” on page 253
- “Standard Attributes in Group Records” on page 258
- “Standard Attributes in Computer Records” on page 259
- “Standard Attributes in Computer Group Records” on page 260
- “Standard Attributes in Mount Records” on page 261
- “Standard Attributes in Config Records” on page 262

For a complete list of standard record types and attributes, see the following file:

/System/Library/Frameworks/DirectoryService.framework/Headers/DirServicesConst.h

Standard Attributes in User Records

The following table describes the standard attributes found in Open Directory user records. Use this information when working in the Workgroup Manager Inspector pane or when mapping user record attributes with Directory Utility.

Important: When mapping Mac OS X user attributes to a read/write LDAP directory domain (an LDAP domain that is not read-only), do not map the RealName and the first RecordName attributes to the same LDAP attribute.

For example, do not map both RealName and RecordName to the cn attribute. If RealName and RecordName are mapped to the same LDAP attribute, problems will occur when you try to edit the full (long) name or the first short name in Workgroup Manager.

Mac OS X user attribute	Format	Example values
RecordName: A list of names associated with a user. The first is the user's short name, which is also the name of the user's home folder. <i>Important:</i> All attributes used for authentication must map to RecordName.	First value: ASCII characters A–Z, a–z, 0–9, _- Second value: UTF-8 Roman text	Dave David Mac DMacSmith Nonzero length, 1 to 16 values. Maximum 255 bytes (85 triple-byte to 255 single-byte characters) per instance. First value must be 1 to 8 bytes for clients using Mac OS X v10.1 or earlier.
RealName: A single name, usually the user's full name; not used for authentication.	UTF-8 text	David L. MacSmith, Jr. Nonzero length, maximum 255 bytes (85 triple-byte to 255 single-byte characters).
UniqueID: A unique user identifier, used for access privilege management.	Signed 32-bit ASCII string of digits 0–9	Values below 500 may have special significance. Values below 100 are typically used for system accounts. Zero is reserved for use by the system. Normally unique among entire population of users, but sometimes can be duplicated. Warning: A noninteger value is interpreted as 0, which is the UniqueID of the root user account.
PrimaryGroupID: A user's primary group association.	Signed 32-bit ASCII string of digits 0–9	Range is 1 to 2,147,483,648. Normally unique among all group records. If blank, 20 is assumed.
NFSHomeDirectory: Local file system path to the user's home folder.	UTF-8 text	/Network/Servers/example/Users/K-M/Tom King Nonzero length. Maximum 255 bytes.

Mac OS X user attribute	Format	Example values
HomeDirectory: The location of an AFP-based home folder.	UTF-8 XML text	<home_dir> <url>afp://server/sharept</url> <path>usershomedir</path> </home_dir> In the following example, Tom King's home folder is K-M/Tom King, which resides beneath the Users share point directory: <home_dir> <url>afp://example.com/Users</url> <path>K-M/Tom King</path> </home_dir>
HomeDirectoryQuota: The disk quota for the user's home folder.	Text for the number of bytes allowed	If the quota is 10 MB, the value will be the text string "1048576."
MailAttribute: A user's mail service configuration.	UTF-8 XML text	
PrintServiceUserData: A user's print quota statistics.	UTF-8 XML plist, single value	.
MCXFlags: If present, MCXSettings is loaded; if absent, MCXSettings isn't loaded. Required for a managed user.	UTF-8 XML plist, single value	
MCXSettings: A user's managed preferences.	UTF-8 XML plist, multivalued	
AdminLimits: The privileges given by Workgroup Manager to a user that can administer the directory domain.	UTF-8 XML plist, single value	
Password: The user's password.	UNIX crypt	
Picture: Path to a recognized graphic file to be used as a display picture for the user.	UTF-8 text	Maximum 255 bytes.
Comment: Any documentation you like.	UTF-8 text	John is in charge of product marketing. Maximum 32,676 bytes.

Mac OS X user attribute	Format	Example values
UserShell: The location of the default shell for command-line interactions with the server.	Path name	/bin/tcsh /bin/sh None. This value prevents users with accounts in the directory domain from accessing the server remotely through a command line. Nonzero length.
Change: Not used by Mac OS X, but corresponds to part of standard LDAP schema.	Number	
Expire: Not used by Mac OS X, but corresponds to part of standard LDAP schema.	Number	
AuthenticationAuthority: Describes the user's authentication methods, such as Open Directory, shadow password, or crypt password. Not required for a user with only a crypt password. Absence of this attribute signifies legacy authentication (crypt with Authentication Manager, if it is available).	ASCII text	Values describe the user's authentication methods. Can be multivalued (for example, ;ApplePasswordServer; and ;Kerberosv5;). Each value has the format <i>vers; tag; data</i> (where <i>vers</i> and <i>data</i> may be blank). Crypt password: ;basic; Open Directory password: ;ApplePasswordServer; HexID, server's public key IPaddress:port ;Kerberosv5;Kerberos data Shadow password (local directory domain only): • ;ShadowHash; • ;ShadowHash;<list of enabled authentication methods>
AuthenticationHint: Text set by the user to be displayed as a password reminder.	UTF-8 text	Your guess is as good as mine. Maximum 255 bytes.
FirstName: Used by Address Book and other applications that use the Contacts search policy.		

Mac OS X user attribute	Format	Example values
<p>LastName:</p> <p>Used by Address Book and other applications that use the Contacts search policy.</p>		
<p>EEmailAddress:</p> <p>An email address that mail should be forwarded to when a user has no MailAttribute defined.</p> <p>Used by Address Book, Mail, and other applications that use the Contacts search policy.</p>	Any legal RFC 822 email address	user@example.com
<p>PhoneNumber:</p> <p>Used by Address Book and other applications that use the Contacts search policy.</p>		
<p>AddressLine1:</p> <p>Used by Address Book and other applications that use the Contacts search policy.</p>		
<p>PostalAddress:</p> <p>Used by Address Book and other applications that use the Contacts search policy.</p>		
<p>PostalCode:</p> <p>Used by Address Book and other applications that use the Contacts search policy.</p>		
<p>OrganizationName:</p> <p>Used by Address Book and other applications that use the Contacts search policy.</p>		

User Data That Mac OS X Server Uses

The following table describes how your Mac OS X Server uses data from user records in directory domains. Consult this table to determine the attributes or data types that your server's services expect to find in user records of directory domains.

In the far-left column, "All services" include AFP, SMB, FTP, HTTP, NFS, WebDAV, POP, IMAP, Workgroup Manager, Server Admin, the Mac OS X login window.

Server component	Mac OS X user attribute	Dependency
All services	RecordName	Required for authentication
All services	RealName	Required for authentication

Server component	Mac OS X user attribute	Dependency
All services	AuthenticationAuthority	Used for Kerberos, password server, and shadow password authentication
All services	Password	Used for basic (crypt password) or LDAP bind authentication
All services	UniqueID	Required for authorization (for example, file permissions and mail accounts)
All services	PrimaryGroupID	Required for authorization (for example, file permissions and mail accounts)
FTP service Web service Apple file service NFS service Mac OS X login window Application and system preferences	HomeDirectory NFSHomeDirectory	Optional
Mail service	MailAttribute	Required to log in to mail service on your server
Mail service	EMailAddress	Optional

Standard Attributes in Group Records

The following table describes the standard attributes found in Open Directory group records. Use this information when working in Workgroup Manager's Inspector pane or when mapping group attributes with Directory Utility.

Mac OS X group attribute	Format	Example values
RecordName: Name associated with a group	ASCII characters A–Z, a–z, 0–9, _	Science Science_Dept Science.Teachers Nonzero length, maximum 255 bytes (85 triple-byte to 255 single-byte characters).
RealName: Usually the group's full name	UTF-8 text	Science Department Teachers Nonzero length, maximum 255 bytes (85 triple-byte to 255 single-byte characters).
PrimaryGroupID: A unique identifier for the group	Signed 32-bit ASCII string of digits 0–9	Normally unique among all group records.
GroupMembership: A list of short names of user records that are considered part of the group	ASCII characters A–Z, a–z, 0–9, _-	bsmith, jdoe Can be an empty list (normally for users' primary group).

Mac OS X group attribute	Format	Example values
HomeDirectory: The location of an AFP-based home folder for the group	Structured UTF-8 text	<pre><home_dir> <url>afp://server/sharept</url> <path>groupomedir</path> </home_dir></pre> <p>In the following example, the Science group's home folder is K-M/Science, which resides beneath the Groups share point directory:</p> <pre><home_dir> <url>afp://example.com/ Groups</url> <path>K-M/Science</path> </home_dir></pre>
Member: Same data as GroupMembership but each is used by different services of Mac OS X Server	ASCII characters A–Z, a–z, 0–9, _-`	bsmith, jdoe Can be an empty list (normally for users' primary group).
HomeLocOwner: The short name of the user that owns the group's home folder	ASCII characters A–Z, a–z, 0–9, _-`	
MCXFlags: If present, MCXSettings is loaded; if absent, MCXSettings isn't loaded; required for a managed user	UTF-8 XML plist, single value	
MCXSettings: The preferences for a workgroup (a managed group)	UTF-8 XML plist, multivalued	

Standard Attributes in Computer Records

The following table describes the standard attributes found in Open Directory computer records.

Computer records associate the hardware address of a computer's primary Ethernet interface with a name for the computer. The name is part of a computer group record (much as a user is in a group).

Use this information when working in Workgroup Manager’s Inspector pane or when mapping computer record attributes with Directory Utility.

Mac OS X computer attribute	Format	Example values
RecordName: Name associated with a computer.	UTF-8 text	iMac 1
Comment: Any documentation you like.	UTF-8 text	
EnetAddress: The value of this attribute must be the Ethernet address (also known as the MAC address) of the computer’s built-in Ethernet interface, even if the computer connects to the directory using another network interface such as AirPort.	Colon-separated hex notation; leading zeroes may be omitted	00:05:02:b7:b5:88
MCXFlags: Used only in the “guest” computer record; if present, MCXSettings is loaded; if absent, MCXSettings isn’t loaded; required for a managed computer.	UTF-8 XML plist, single value	
MCXSettings: Used only in the “guest” computer record; a managed computer’s preferences.	UTF-8 XML plist, multivalued	

Standard Attributes in Computer Group Records

The following table describes the standard attributes found in Open Directory computer group records. A computer group record identifies a group of computers (much as a group record identifies a collection of users).

Use this information when working in Workgroup Manager’s Inspector pane or when mapping computer group record attributes with Directory Utility.

Mac OS X computer group attribute	Format	Example values
RecordName: Name associated with a computer group	UTF-8 text	Lab Computers Nonzero length, maximum 255 bytes (85 triple-byte to 255 single-byte characters)
MCXFlags	UTF-8 XML plist, single value	

Mac OS X computer group attribute	Format	Example values
MCXSettings: Stores preferences for a managed computer	UTF-8 XML plist, multivalued	
Computers	Multivalued list of computer record names	iMac 1, iMac 2
Group A list of groups whose members may log in on the computers in this computer group	Multivalued list of short names of groups	herbivores, omnivores

Standard Attributes in Mount Records

The following table describes the standard attributes found in Open Directory mount records. Use this information when working in Workgroup Manager's Inspector pane or when mapping mount record attributes with Directory Utility.

Mac OS X mount attributes	Format	Example values
RecordName: Host and path of the sharepoint	UTF-8 text	<i>hostname:/path on server</i> <i>indigo:/Volumes/home2</i>
VFSLinkDir Path for the mount on a client	UTF-8 text	<i>/Network/Servers</i>
VFSType	ASCII text	For AFP: url For NFS: nfs
VFSOpts	UTF-8 text	For AFP (two values): net url==afp:// ;AUTH=NO%20USER%20 AUTHENT@server/sharepoint/ For NFS: net
VFSDumpFreq		
VFSPassNo		

Standard Attributes in Config Records

The following table describes the standard attributes found in the following Open Directory config records:

- The mcx_cache record always has the RecordName of mcx_cache. It also uses RealName and DataStamp to determine whether the cache should be updated or whether the server settings should be ignored. If you want managed clients, you must have an mcx_cache config record.
- The passwordserver record has the PasswordServerLocation attribute.

Use this information when working in Workgroup Manager’s Inspector pane or when mapping config record attributes with Directory Utility.

Mac OS X config attributes	Format	Example values
RecordName: Name associated with a config	ASCII characters A–Z, a–z, 0–9, _-.,	mcx_cache passwordserver Nonzero length, maximum 255 bytes (85 triple-byte to 255 single-byte characters).
PasswordServerLocation: Identifies the host of the password server that’s associated with the directory domain	IP address or host name	192.168.1.90
RealName		For the mcx_cache config record, RealName is a GUID.
DataStamp		For the mcx_cache config record, DataStamp is a GUID.

Active Directory The directory and authentication service of Microsoft Windows 2000 Server, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2003 R2.

administrator A user with server or directory domain administration privileges. Administrators are always members of the predefined “admin” group.

administrator computer A Mac OS X computer onto which you’ve installed the server administration applications from the Mac OS X Server Admin CD.

AFP Apple Filing Protocol. A client/server protocol used by Apple file service to share files and network services. AFP uses TCP/IP and other protocols to support communication between computers on a network.

attribute A named data item containing a specific type of information and belonging to an entry (record or object) in a directory domain. The actual data that an attribute contains is its value.

authentication The process of proving a user’s identity, typically by validating a user name and password. Usually authentication occurs before an authorization process determines the user’s level of access to a resource. For example, file service authorizes full access to folders and files that an authenticated user owns.

authentication authority attribute A value that identifies the password validation scheme specified for a user and provides additional information as required.

authorization The process by which a service determines whether it should grant a user access to a resource and how much access the service should allow the user to have. Usually authorization occurs after an authentication process proves the user’s identity. For example, file service authorizes full access to folders and files that an authenticated user owns.

binding A connection between a computer and a directory domain for the purpose of getting identification, authorization, and other administrative data. (verb) Also, the process of making such a connection. See also **trusted binding**.

BSD Berkeley Software Distribution. A version of UNIX on which Mac OS X software is based.

child A computer that gets configuration information from the shared directory domain of a parent.

CIFS Common Internet File System. See **SMB**.

class See **object class**.

computer account A computer account stores data that allows Mac OS X Server to identify and manage an individual computer. You create a computer account for each computer that you intend to add to a computer group.

computer list A set of computers that all receive the managed preference settings defined for the list, and that are all available to a particular set of users and groups. A computer can be a member of only one computer list. Computer lists are created in Mac OS X Server version 10.4 or earlier.

cracker A malicious user who tries to gain unauthorized access to a computer system in order to disrupt computers and networks or steal information. Compare to **hacker**.

crypt password A type of password that's stored as a hash (using the standard UNIX encryption algorithm) directly in a user record.

DHCP Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. A protocol used to dynamically distribute IP addresses to client computers. Each time a client computer starts up, the protocol looks for a DHCP server and then requests an IP address from the DHCP server it finds. The DHCP server checks for an available IP address and sends it to the client computer along with a lease period—the length of time the client computer may use the address.

directory domain A specialized database that stores authoritative information about users and network resources; the information is needed by system software and applications. The database is optimized to handle many requests for information and to find and retrieve information quickly. Also called a directory node or simply a directory.

directory domain hierarchy A way of organizing local and shared directory domains. A hierarchy has an inverted tree structure, with a root domain at the top and local domains at the bottom.

directory node See **directory domain**.

directory services Services that provide system software and applications with uniform access to directory domains and other sources of information about users and resources.

distinguished name Specifies an entry (object) in an LDAP directory. Represented as a sequence of directory entries separated by commas, starting with the entry itself and followed by each entry that contains the previous entry in the sequence. Example: "cn=users, dc=example, dc=com."

entry An article posted on a blog. Readers can add comments to the entry, but the content associated with the entry can be changed only by the blog owner. In an LDAP directory, an entry is a collection of attributes (data items) that has a unique distinguished name. See also **distinguished name**.

FTP File Transfer Protocol. A protocol that allows computers to transfer files over a network. FTP clients using any operating system that supports FTP can connect to a file server and download files, depending on their access privileges. Most Internet browsers and a number of freeware applications can be used to access an FTP server.

group A collection of users who have similar needs. Groups simplify the administration of shared resources.

group folder A folder that organizes documents and applications of special interest to group members and allows group members to pass information among themselves.

guest user A user who can log in to your server without a user name or password.

hacker An individual who enjoys programming, and explores ways to program new features and expand the capabilities of a computer system. See also **cracker**.

hash (noun) A scrambled, or encrypted, form of a password or other text.

IP Internet Protocol. Also known as IPv4. A method used with Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) to send data between computers over a local network or the Internet. IP delivers data packets and TCP keeps track of data packets.

IP address A unique numeric address that identifies a computer on the Internet.

KDC Kerberos Key Distribution Center. A trusted server that issues Kerberos tickets.

Kerberos A secure network authentication system. Kerberos uses tickets, which are issued for a specific user, service, and period of time. After a user is authenticated, it's possible to access additional services without retyping a password (called single sign-on) for services that have been configured to take Kerberos tickets. Mac OS X Server uses Kerberos v5.

Kerberos realm The authentication domain comprising the users and services that are registered with the same Kerberos server. The registered users and services trust the Kerberos server to verify each other's identities.

LDAP Lightweight Directory Access Protocol. A standard client-server protocol for accessing a directory domain.

local domain A directory domain that can be accessed only by the computer it resides on.

local hostname A name that designates a computer on a local subnet. It can be used without a global DNS system to resolve names to IP addresses. It consists of lowercase letters, numbers, or hyphens (except as the last characters), and ends with “.local” (For example, bills-computer.local). Although the default name is derived from the computer name, a user can specify this name in the Sharing pane of System Preferences. It can be changed easily, and can be used anywhere a DNS name or fully qualified domain name is used. It can only resolve on the same subnet as the computer using it.

long name The long form of a user or group name. See also **user name**.

Mac OS X The latest version of the Apple operating system. Mac OS X combines the reliability of UNIX with the ease of use of Macintosh.

Mac OS X Server An industrial-strength server platform that supports Mac, Windows, UNIX, and Linux clients out of the box and provides a suite of scalable workgroup and network services plus advanced remote management tools.

managed client A user, group, or computer whose access privileges and/or preferences are under administrative control.

managed preferences System or application preferences that are under administrative control. Workgroup Manager allows administrators to control settings for certain system preferences for Mac OS X managed clients.

multicast DNS A protocol developed by Apple for automatic discovery of computers, devices, and services on IP networks. Called Bonjour (previously Rendezvous) by Apple, this proposed Internet standard protocol is sometimes referred to as ZeroConf or multicast DNS. For more information, visit www.apple.com or www.zeroconf.org. To see how this protocol is used in Mac OS X Server, see **local hostname**.

NetInfo An older Apple protocol for accessing a directory domain.

object class A set of rules that define similar objects in a directory domain by specifying attributes that each object must have and other attributes that each object may have.

Open Directory The Apple directory services architecture, which can access authoritative information about users and network resources from directory domains that use LDAP, Active Directory protocols, or BSD configuration files, and network services.

Open Directory master A server that provides LDAP directory service, Kerberos authentication service, and Open Directory Password Server.

Open Directory password A password that's stored in secure databases on the server and can be authenticated using Open Directory Password Server or Kerberos (if Kerberos is available).

Open Directory Password Server An authentication service that validates passwords using a variety of conventional authentication methods required by the different services of Mac OS X Server. The authentication methods include APOP, CRAM-MD5, DHX, LAN Manager, NTLMv1, NTLMv2, and WebDAV-Digest.

open source A term for the cooperative development of software by the Internet community. The basic principle is to involve as many people as possible in writing and debugging code by publishing the source code and encouraging the formation of a large community of developers who will submit modifications and enhancements.

owner The owner of an item can change access permissions to the item. The owner may also change the group entry to any group the owner is a member of. By default, the owner has Read & Write permissions.

parent A computer whose shared directory domain provides configuration information to another computer.

password An alphanumeric string used to authenticate the identity of a user or to authorize access to files or services.

Password Server See **Open Directory Password Server**.

primary group A user's default group. The file system uses the ID of the primary group when a user accesses a file he or she doesn't own.

primary group ID A unique number that identifies a primary group.

principal, Kerberos The name and other identifying information of a client or service that Kerberos can authenticate. A user principal is usually a user's name or user's name and Kerberos realm. A service's principal is usually the service name, server's fully-qualified DNS name, and Kerberos realm.

protocol A set of rules that determines how data is sent back and forth between two applications.

schema The collection of attributes and record types or classes that provide a blueprint for the information in a directory domain.

search base A distinguished name that identifies where to start searching for information in an LDAP directory's hierarchy of entries.

search path See **search policy**.

search policy A list of directory domains searched by a Mac OS X computer when it needs configuration information; also, the order in which domains are searched. Sometimes called a search path.

shadow password A password that's stored in a secure file on the server and can be authenticated using a variety of conventional authentication methods required by the different services of Mac OS X Server. The authentication methods include APOP, CRAM-MD5, DHX, LAN Manager, NTLMv1, NTLMv2, and WebDAV-Digest.

share point A folder, hard disk (or hard disk partition), or optical disc that's accessible over the network. A share point is the point of access at the top level of a group of shared items. Share points can be shared using AFP, SMB, NFS (an export), or FTP.

short name An abbreviated name for a user. The short name is used by Mac OS X for home folders, authentication, and email addresses.

single sign-on An authentication strategy that relieves users from entering a name and password separately for every network service. Mac OS X Server uses Kerberos to enable single sign-on.

SLP DA Service Location Protocol Directory Agent. A protocol that registers services available on a network and gives users easy access to them. When a service is added to the network, the service uses SLP to register itself on the network. SLP DA uses a centralized repository for registered network services.

SMB Server Message Block. A protocol that allows client computers to access files and network services. It can be used over TCP/IP, the Internet, and other network protocols. SMB services use SMB to provide access to servers, printers, and other network resources.

SSL Secure Sockets Layer. An Internet protocol that allows you to send encrypted, authenticated information across the Internet. More recent versions of SSL are known as TLS (Transport Level Security).

standalone server A server that provides services on a network but doesn't get directory services from another server or provide directory services to other computers.

ticket, Kerberos A temporary credential that proves a Kerberos client's identity to a service.

ticket-granting ticket A special Kerberos ticket that enables a client to obtain tickets for services within the same realm. A client gets a ticket-granting ticket by proving identity, for example by entering a valid name and password during login.

trusted binding A mutually authenticated connection between a computer and a directory domain. The computer provides credentials to prove its identity, and the directory domain provides credentials to prove its authenticity.

user name The long name for a user, sometimes referred to as the user's real name. See also **short name**.

WebDAV Web-based Distributed Authoring and Versioning. A live authoring environment that allows client users to check out webpages, make changes, and then check the pages back in to the site while the site is running.

WebDAV realm A region of a website, usually a folder or directory, that's defined to provide access for WebDAV users and groups.

A

access

- ACLs 40, 73, 74, 175
- Active Directory domains 159, 169
- administrator 74, 175
- attributes 176
- DACs 180
- directory domain uses 24
- directory service 132, 133
- file 24
- folder 24
- group 174
- login window 174
- record 176
- replicas 88
- server 29, 174
- SSH 174
- user 157, 173, 174, 201
- See also* LDAP; permissions

access control entries. *See* ACEs

access control lists. *See* ACLs

accounts

- administrator 84, 166
- root 123, 124, 201
- See also* group accounts; mobile accounts; user accounts; Workgroup Manager

ACEs (access control entries) 74

ACL attribute 235

ACL object class 216

ACLs (access control lists) 40, 73, 74, 175

Active Directory

- accessing 159
- administrator groups 166
- advanced settings 132, 156
- authentication 167
- binding to 160, 168
- client connections 121
- cross-domain authorization 69
- definition 25
- disabling service 132
- editing records 168
- enabling service 132
- group IDs 164, 165

- home folders 157, 162
- Kerberos conflicts 70
- LDAP access 169
- mobile accounts 158, 161
- Open Directory setup 60
- preferred designation 166
- server setup 95
- troubleshooting 200, 203
- unbinding from server 168
- UNIX shell attribute 163
- user IDs 163
- See also* mappings

Address Book 38, 128, 134

addresses. *See* Ethernet ID; IP addresses; NAT

administrator

- access control 74, 175
- accounts for 84, 166
- authentication authority 86, 88, 92, 115, 116
- directory services 19
- Kerberos 47, 97
- limits on 219
- passwords for 45, 111, 112, 201, 206
- planning domains 36
- privileges of 74, 75
- search policies 36

APOP (authenticated POP) 52, 56

archiving Open Directory master 194, 195

attributes

- access control 176
- ACL 235
- Active Directory 165
- adding 70, 148
- authentication 44, 118, 181, 219, 232, 233
- automount 237
- computer 230, 259
- computer group 260
- computer list 230
- configuration 154, 231, 262
- contact information 221
- directory 157
- directory services 148
- group 224
- importing 183

- introduction 25
- LDAP 147
- location 233
- machine 226
- mount 227, 261
- neighborhood 235
- passwords 231
- printer 219, 229
- replication 232
- resource 236
- schema 236
- service 231, 234
- service URL 231
- standard 253
- TTL 217
- UNIX shell 163
- user 217, 233, 253, 257
- XML plist 231
- See also* mappings
- augment object class 216
- authentication
 - Active Directory 167
 - administrator 86, 88, 92, 115, 116
 - attributes 44, 118, 181, 219, 232, 233
 - bind 56, 116, 137
 - cached 41
 - clients 48, 51
 - credential-based 41, 48
 - definition 40
 - directory domains 24, 61
 - file services 53
 - LDAP 56, 116, 137, 153
 - methods 41, 42, 52, 54, 55, 56, 94
 - monitoring of 178
 - Open Directory master 31, 98
 - overview 11, 21, 39, 105
 - replication 62
 - SASL 12, 52
 - search policies 38, 128
 - server 49, 73
 - troubleshooting 199, 201, 202, 203, 205, 206
 - user 40, 45, 46
 - See also* Kerberos; passwords
- authentication authority attributes 44, 118, 181, 233
- authentication authority object class 215
- Authentication Manager 32, 42, 118
- authorization 40, 69, 73, 74, 75, 175
- See also* authentication
- automount attribute 237
- automount object classes 216
- automount share points 24
- AutoServerSetup record type 252

B

backup domain controller. *See* BDC

basic authentication. *See* crypt passwords

BDC (backup domain controller) 32, 85, 91, 190

Berkeley DB 11, 61

Berkeley Software Distribution. *See* BSD

binding

- Active Directory 168
- LDAP authentication 56, 116, 137, 151
- Open Directory server 184
- rebind-try delay time 151
- See also* trusted binding

boot process. *See* startup

BSD (Berkeley System Distribution) files 25, 171

C

cached authentication 41

cascading replication 61, 64, 65, 91

certificates 69, 187, 188

client computers

- BSD files 25, 171
- connections 61, 119, 121, 122, 123
- failover process 92
- mount records 126, 127, 128
- NIS 25, 170
- Open Directory support 61
- search policies 35, 128, 129, 130, 131
- setup 120, 121, 125, 126
- share points 24
- See also* directory services

clients, authentication of 48, 51

See also client computers; group accounts; users

command-line tools

- deleting users or computers 181
- directory configuration 157
- overview 78
- passwords 112, 115
- restoring servers 195, 196
- short name changes 182
- SSH 174

computer attributes 230, 259

computer group attributes 260

computer group object class 213

computer list attributes 230

computer list object class 212

computer lists, mappings 244, 245, 248

computer name 86, 92, 116, 149

computer object class 211

computers

- deleting 181
- mappings 243
- replica connections 90
- search policies 37, 38
- time synchronization 97
- See also* client computers

Config record type 154, 245, 246

configuration

- attributes for 262
 - BSD files 171
 - client computers 120, 121, 262
 - command-line tools 157
 - connection 93, 94, 95, 121, 122, 123
 - cross-domain authorization 69
 - directory domain overview 58
 - directory services 125, 126
 - failover 92
 - Kerberos 97, 98, 99, 102
 - LDAP 135, 136, 138, 140, 141, 143
 - local directory domain 81
 - Open Directory master 83, 85
 - Open Directory Password Server 83
 - Open Directory replica 88, 90, 91
 - overview 79, 80
 - planning for 60
 - replica sets 63
 - server 94, 95, 252
 - trusted binding 149
 - UNIX files 21, 23, 25
 - Windows domain 85, 86, 87
 - configuration attributes 231, 262
 - configuration object classes 212
 - contact information attributes 221
 - contacts, search policies 38, 128
 - container object class 209
 - controllers, BDC 32, 85, 91, 190
 - See also* PDC
 - CRAM-MD5 authentication 52
 - credential-based authentication 41, 48
 - See also* Kerberos
 - cross-domain authorization 69
 - crypt passwords
 - changing to 110
 - definition 42
 - encryption 44
 - security issues 44
 - user account migration 117
 - Windows limitations 31, 42
- D**
- DACs (Directory Access Controls) 180
 - databases
 - Berkeley DB 11, 61
 - LDAP 186
 - Open Directory Password Server 54, 56
 - delay rebinding options, LDAP 151
 - denial of service attack. *See* DoS attack
 - DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) service
 - LDAP 37, 129, 134
 - mobile accounts 132
 - option 95 37, 184
 - security 131
 - DHX authentication 42, 53
 - Digest-MD5 authentication 53
 - directories. *See* directory services; domains, directory; folders
 - Directory Access Controls. *See* DACs
 - directory services
 - access 132, 133
 - administrators for 19
 - advanced settings 125, 132
 - attributes 148
 - benefits of 19
 - connection problems 201
 - Kerberos readiness 98
 - mapping of 148, 154
 - organization of 20
 - planning of 36
 - setup 125, 126
 - See also* Active Directory; domains, directory; Open Directory
 - Directory Utility 69, 77, 119, 125, 126
 - distinguished name (DN) 27, 138
 - DNS (Domain Name System) service
 - attributes 233, 234
 - Kerberos 83, 97, 98, 200
 - Open Directory setup 83, 98
 - Windows users 86
 - documentation 15, 16, 17
 - Domain Name System. *See* DNS
 - domains, directory
 - authentication 24, 61
 - binding of 184
 - identifying servers 62
 - integrating 69
 - NetInfo 32, 110, 118
 - NIS 25, 170
 - non-Apple 30
 - organization of 20, 24, 25
 - planning of 36, 57, 58, 80
 - ports 73
 - replication 59
 - schemas 26, 70, 158, 207, 208, 209
 - search policies 128, 129, 130, 131
 - storage capacity of 61
 - See also* LDAP; local directory domains; Open Directory; Windows domain
 - DoS attack (denial of service) 45, 187
 - dsconfigad tool 157
 - dsconfigldap tool 157
 - Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. *See* DHCP
- E**
- encryption 44, 53, 157
 - entries, object class 25, 27
 - Ethernet ID 205
 - exporting users 117
 - See also* importing

F

- failover
 - BDC 32, 85, 91, 190
 - load balancing 65
 - PDC 32
 - setup 92
- files
 - access control 24
 - BSD 25, 171
 - property list 200
 - UNIX configuration 21, 23, 25
- file services
 - authentication 53
 - NFS 126, 127, 128
 - share points 24, 126
 - SMB 30, 53
- finding users and groups 28, 29
 - See also* searching
- firewalls, limitations of 48
- firewall service 73
- folders, access control 24
 - See also* files; home folders
- full name. *See* long name

G

- GiD (group ID) 69, 157, 164, 165
- globally unique identifier. *See* GUID
- global password policy 111
- group accounts
 - as administrators 166
 - GiD mappings 164
 - group ID 157, 165
 - importing 183
 - presets 213, 248, 249
 - See also* groups
- group attributes 224, 258
- group auxiliary object class 210
- group ID. *See* GiD
- groups
 - access control 174
 - finding 28, 29
 - information storage for 24
 - joining Kerberos realm 100
 - mappings 164, 241, 242, 248, 249
 - tiered administration 75
- GUID (globally unique identifier) 183

H

- hash, password 41, 54, 55
- help, using 14
- home folders
 - Active Directory 157, 162
 - directory domain uses 24
 - group attributes 224
 - local user 162

- network 162
- user attributes 217, 220, 223

I

- idle timeout, LDAP connection 152
- importing
 - attributes 183
 - groups 183
 - records 183
 - users 117, 183
- Inspector 179, 180, 181
- IP addresses 83, 121
- IP firewall service 73

K

- Kerberos
 - administrator 47, 97
 - attributes 232
 - authentication process 51
 - cross-domain authorization 69
 - deleting identities 181
 - directory domain conflicts 70
 - DNS 83, 97, 98, 200
 - enabling 111, 204
 - features 11, 41, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50
 - joining 100, 102
 - LDAP 70
 - passwords 46
 - principals 51
 - realms 51, 102, 205
 - replication of 62
 - security 48, 49, 194
 - setup 97, 98, 99, 102
 - troubleshooting 199, 203
 - users 46, 99

L

- LAN Manager authentication 42, 53
- LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol)
 - connection settings 152
 - timeouts 152
- LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol)
 - service
 - Active Directory 169
 - administrator requirement 86
 - advanced settings 133
 - authentication 56, 116, 137, 151, 153
 - command-line tools 157, 182
 - configuration 90, 135, 136, 138, 140, 141, 143
 - connection settings 93, 150, 151
 - database location 186
 - definition 25
 - DHCP 37, 129, 134
 - direct access to 129
 - disabling 133, 134

- enabling 133, 134
- Kerberos 70
- Mac OS X 155
- mail 134
- NetInfo, migrating from 32, 118
- Open Directory 11, 208, 209
- read-only access 152
- replication 62
- schemas 208, 209
- searching 27, 84, 146, 186, 187, 203
- search policies 37
- security 40, 106, 145, 153, 184, 186, 187, 188
- server referrals 152
- structure of 27
- timeouts 150, 151, 187
- troubleshooting 201, 203
- user privileges 75, 152, 155
- See also* attributes; mappings; object classes; trusted binding
- ldapmodrdn tool 182
- ldapsearch tool 155
- LDAPv2 access 152
- LDAPv3 access 75, 90, 133, 136, 169
- Leopard server. *See* Mac OS X Server
- load balancing 60, 65
- local directory domains
 - introduction 26, 28
 - mount records 126, 127, 128
 - password types 40, 41
 - planning for 58
 - search policy 33, 35, 37, 131
 - setup 81
 - Windows users 31
- local home folders 162
- location attributes 233
- location object class 215
- Locations record type 253
- login
 - access control 174
 - directory domains 24, 62
 - failed attempts 178
 - mobile accounts 67
 - passwords 42
 - picture for user 219
 - speeding up 63
 - troubleshooting 202
 - user instructions 85
 - Windows setup authority 86
- logs, Open Directory 72, 178
- long name 224, 232
- See also* short name; user name

M

- machine attributes 226
- machine auxiliary object class 210

- Mac OS X
 - BSD files 171
 - Open Directory passwords 41
 - populating directories 155
 - read-only LDAP access 155
 - troubleshooting login 202
- Mac OS X Server
 - adding connections 121
 - authentications supported 32, 46, 53, 94
 - BDC 32
 - BSD files 171
 - failover issues 92
 - importing records 183
 - password migration 117
 - restoring Open Directory master 195
 - trusted binding 184
 - upgrading 67, 118
- mail service 24, 52, 134, 218
- managed network views 25
- mappings
 - Active Directory 158, 163, 164, 165
 - AutoServerSetup record type 252
 - computer lists 244, 245, 248
 - computers 243
 - Config record type 245, 246
 - directory services 148, 154
 - groups 164, 241, 242, 248, 249
 - LDAP 136, 138, 146, 148, 154
 - Locations record type 253
 - mounts 242, 243
 - overview 207
 - People record type 246, 247
 - printers 251
 - RFC 2307 140, 154, 164
 - users 163, 238, 249, 250
- media access control. *See* Ethernet ID
- migration
 - NetInfo to LDAP 32, 118
 - password 117
- mobile accounts
 - Active Directory 158, 161
 - LDAP 132
 - login 67
 - password policies 45, 112
 - search policies 37, 38
 - VPN service 67
- mount attributes 227, 261
- mounting, automounting 24, 216, 237
- mount object class 211
- Mount record type 126, 127, 128, 242, 243, 261
- MS-CHAPv2 authentication 53, 94

N

- naming conventions
 - computer name 86, 92, 116, 149

- long name 224, 232
- short name 182
- user name 84
- NAT (Network Address Translation) 66
- neighborhood attributes 235
- neighborhood object class 215
- NeST tool 115
- NetBIOS name 92
- NetInfo domains 32, 110, 118
- Network Address Translation. *See* NAT
- Network File System. *See* NFS
- network home folders 162
- Network Information Service. *See* NIS
- networks
 - client connections 61, 119, 121, 122, 123
 - configuration 93, 94, 95, 121, 122, 123
 - Kerberos realm 205
 - LDAP connections 93, 150, 151, 152
 - managed views 25
 - private 66
 - public 66
 - replica connections 90
 - troubleshooting 201
- network services
 - IP addresses 83, 121
 - IP firewall service 73
 - NAT 66
 - VPN 53, 67, 202
 - See also* DHCP; DNS
- network time protocol. *See* NTP
- NFS (Network File System) 126, 127, 128
- NIS (Network Information Service) 25, 170
- NTLM authentication 42, 53, 94
- NTP (network time protocol) 203

O

- object classes
 - ACL 216
 - adding to schemas 70
 - augment 216
 - authentication authority 215
 - automount 216
 - computer 211, 212, 213
 - computer group 213
 - computer list 212
 - configuration 212, 215
 - container 209
 - group 210, 213
 - introduction 25
 - location 215
 - machine auxiliary 210
 - mount 211
 - neighborhood 215
 - overview 209
 - printer 211

- resource 216
- service 215
- TTL 209
- user 209, 214
- See also* attributes
- offline attacks 43
- open/close timeout, LDAP connection 150
- Open Directory
 - access tools 25, 173, 174, 175, 176
 - and BDC 32, 91
 - binding policy 184
 - client computer support 61
 - connection setup 93, 94, 95, 121
 - DNS setup 83, 98
 - editing data 179, 180, 181, 182
 - functions of 20
 - history of 21, 23
 - and Inspector 179, 180, 181
 - and Kerberos 11, 41, 70
 - and LDAP 11, 208, 209
 - maintaining 173
 - management tools 75, 76, 77, 78
 - monitoring of 177, 178
 - options settings 183, 184
 - overview 11, 19
 - and PDC 31, 85, 86, 87
 - performance improvement 72
 - remote servers 81
 - replication of 189
 - security policy 184
 - setup 60, 79, 80
 - SMB services 30
 - standalone service 81
 - status checking 177, 178
 - turning on 81
 - uses for 24
 - viewing data 179
 - and Workgroup Manager 20
 - See also* Active Directory; domains, directory; mappings
- Open Directory master
 - archiving 194, 195
 - authentication 31, 98
 - binding 184
 - definition 62
 - and DNS 83, 98
 - failover 92
 - introduction 26
 - passwords 107
 - and replicas 61, 64, 66, 67, 83, 189, 190, 193
 - restoring 195
 - security policy 184
 - setup 83, 85
 - status checking 177
 - troubleshooting 199, 200
 - upgrading 67

Open Directory Password Server

- archiving 194
- authentication 31, 41, 52
- database 54, 56
- deleting slots 181
- password policy 45
- replication of 62
- security 73
- setup 83
- troubleshooting 202

Open Directory replica

- access control 88
- attributes 232
- authentication 62
- and BDC 32
- changing to relay 190
- decommissioning of 193
- failover 92
- hosting 89
- introduction 12, 26
- and master 61, 64, 66, 67, 83, 189, 190, 193
- NAT 66
- passwords 62, 63, 107
- promotion of 190
- replica sets 63
- setup 88, 90, 91
- synchronization of 190
- troubleshooting 199, 200
- updating 72

OpenLDAP. *See* Open Directory

open source modules 11

See also Kerberos; Open Directory

option 95, DHCP 37, 184

P

PAC (Privilege Attribute Certificate) 69

packets, data 157

passwords

- administrator 45, 111, 112, 201, 206
- attributes 231
- best practices 43
- creating 106, 117
- exporting 117
- hash 41, 54, 55
- importing 117
- LDAP 153
- migration of 117
- Open Directory 41, 42, 43, 44, 52, 92, 108, 114
- policies 39, 45, 111, 112, 220
- on replicas 63
- resetting 54, 107, 206
- root account 124
- vs. single sign-on 46
- troubleshooting 201, 202, 205

types 40, 41, 42, 108, 110

user accounts 201

Windows domain 31, 42, 44

See also crypt passwords; Open Directory Password Server; shadow passwords

Password Server. *See* Open Directory Password Server

PDC (primary domain controller)

- failover 32
- Open Directory as 31, 85, 86, 87
- replication scheduling 189
- server setup 94

People record type 246, 247

permissions

- access 175
- administrator 75
- record 176
- tiered administration 75
- user 75, 152, 155

picture, user login 219

plug-ins 11, 157

portable computers, search policies 37, 38

See also mobile accounts

ports

- directory domain server 73
- replication 193
- service attribute 234

preset computer group object class 213

preset computer list object class 212

PresetComputerLists record type 248

preset computer object class 213

preset group object class 213

PresetGroups record type 248, 249

preset user attribute 233

preset user object class 214

PresetUsers record type 249, 250

primary domain controller. *See* PDC

principals, Kerberos 51

printer attributes 219, 229

printer object class 211

Printers record type 251

private network 53, 66, 67, 202

Privilege Attribute Certificate. *See* PAC

privileges, administrator 75

See also permissions

problems. *See* troubleshooting

property list files 200

protocols

- NTP 203

- SMB 30

See also DHCP; LDAP

pseudo-master server 69

public network 66

pwpolicy tool 112

Q

query timeout, LDAP 151

R

RAID (Redundant Array of Independent Disks) 73

RDN (relative distinguished name) 27

read-only access, LDAP 152, 155

realms. *See* Kerberos

RealName 147

real name. *See* long name

rebind-try delay time, LDAP 151

records

- access control 176

- adding to schemas 70

- DACs settings 180

- deleting 181

- directory domain capacity 61

- editing Active Directory 168

- enabling for Kerberos 204

- importing 183

- introduction 25

- mapping to directory services 148, 154

- permissions 176

- standard types 253

- See also* attributes; mappings

Redundant Array of Independent Disks. *See* RAID

referrals, server 152

relative distinguished name. *See* RDN

relays 91, 190, 200

remote servers 81, 126, 174

replication

- cascading 61, 64, 65, 91

- directory domains 59

- management of 189, 190, 193

- monitoring of 177

- multibuilding 66

- ports 193

- security 73

- subordinate servers 69

- See also* Open Directory replica

resource attribute 236

resource object class 216

resource usage 24

RFC 2307 mapping 140, 154, 164

root account 123, 124, 201

S

SACLS (service access control lists) 40, 73, 175

SASL (Simple Authentication and Security Layer) 12, 52

- See also* Open Directory Password Server

schema attributes 236

schemas, directory domain 26, 70, 158, 207, 208, 209

- See also* attributes; object classes; records

search base, LDAP 27, 84, 147, 203

searching

- LDAP 27, 84, 146, 186, 187, 203

- users and groups 28, 29

search policies

- administrator 36

- advanced settings 128

- authentication 38, 128

- automatic 36, 129

- changing 131

- computers 37, 38

- contacts 38, 128

- custom 38, 130

- definition 30, 33

- DHCP 131

- LDAP 37

- levels 33, 34, 35

- local 131

secure SHell. *See* SSH

Secure Sockets Layer. *See* SSL

security

- best practices 73

- certificates 69, 187, 188

- DHCP 131

- disabling authentication methods 54, 55

- firewalls 48, 73

- Kerberos 48, 194

- LDAP 40, 106, 145, 153, 184, 186, 187, 188

- root accounts 124

- SASL 12, 52

- search policies 38

- server policy settings 184

- SSL 56, 121, 187, 188

- user accounts 43

- See also* authentication; passwords; permissions

Server Admin 69, 76

Server Assistant configuration object class 215

Server Message Block. *See* SMB

servers

- accessing 29, 174

- adding 121

- authentication 49, 73

- binding to 184

- editing 122

- hosting replicas on 89

- identifying 62

- Kerberos realm connections 102, 205

- monitoring 123

- ports for 73

- pseudo-master 69

- referrals 152

- remote 81, 126, 174

- removing 122

- restoring 195, 196

- security policy 184

- setup 94, 95, 252

- subordinate 69
- unbinding from 168
- See also* Open Directory
- service access control lists. *See* SACLs
- service attributes 231, 234
- service object class 215
- setup procedures. *See* configuration
- shadow passwords
 - authentication methods 52, 113
 - changing to 110
 - definition 41
 - disabling 55
 - features 44
 - security issues 43
 - Windows limitations 31, 42
- shared directory domains
 - identifying servers 62
 - introduction 28, 29
 - NetInfo 32, 110, 118
 - planning for 57, 58
 - search policies 34, 35
 - troubleshooting login 202
 - user information 82
 - See also* LDAP
- share points 24, 126
- short name 182
- Simple Authentication and Security Layer. *See* SASL
- single sign-on authentication 11, 46, 48, 49, 71
 - See also* Kerberos
- slapconfig tool 195, 196
- SMB (Server Message Block) protocol service 30, 53
- SSH (secure SHell host) 73, 89, 174
- ssh tool 174
- SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) 56, 121, 187, 188
- standalone directory service. *See* local directory domains
- startup, problems with 201
- subordinate server 69

T

- templates, LDAP mapping 148
- ticketbased authentication 48
 - See also* Kerberos
- tiered administration 75
- time synchronization 52, 63, 97, 203
- time-to-live attribute (TTL) 217
- time-to-live object class (TTL) 209
- troubleshooting
 - Active Directory 200
 - authentication 199, 201, 202, 203, 205, 206
 - connections 201
 - replication 199, 200
- trusted binding
 - Active Directory 160

- definition 134
- options for 137
- policies 184
- setup 149
- stopping 143, 150
- TTL attribute. *See* time-to-live attribute
- two-level search policies 34

U

- UIDs (user IDs) 69, 84, 157, 163
- UNIX
 - configuration files 21, 23
 - crypt passwords 110
 - group ID mapping 164
 - RFC 2307 mapping 140
 - security issues 43
- UNIX shell attribute 163
- upgrading Mac OS X Server 67, 118
- URLs (Uniform Resource Locators) 231
- user accounts
 - accessing 157
 - deleting 181
 - directory domains 58, 71, 82
 - editing 168
 - exporting 117
 - finding 28, 29
 - importing 117, 183
 - passwords 56, 201
 - root 123, 124, 201
 - security 43
 - user names 84
 - See also* group accounts; passwords; users
- user attributes 217, 233, 253, 257
- user IDs. *See* UIDs
- user name 84
- user object classes 209
- users
 - access control 157, 173, 174, 201
 - authentication 40, 45, 46, 99
 - cross-domain authorization 69
 - directory domain uses 24, 28, 29
 - directory service benefits 19
 - login 85, 219
 - mappings 154, 163, 238, 249, 250
 - migration of 118
 - object classes 209, 214
 - permissions 75, 152, 155
 - preferences storage 24
 - record types 249, 250
 - troubleshooting authentication 201, 202, 203, 205
 - Windows 30, 31, 86
 - See also* clients; home folders; user accounts; Workgroup Manager

V

VPN (Virtual Private Network) 53, 67, 202

W

WebDAV-Digest authentication 53, 56

Windows 2000 setup 87

Windows domain

BDC 32, 85, 91

Open Directory setup for 85, 86, 87

passwords 31, 42, 44

PDC 31, 85, 86, 87

See also Active Directory; SMB

Windows XP setup 86, 87

Workgroup Manager

authentication role 105

deleting user accounts 181

editing directory data 179

functions of 77

Inspector 179, 180, 181

LDAP directories 155

and Open Directory 20

X

XML plist attribute 231